

# Application for an Environmental Assessment Certificate / Environmental Impact Statement

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface

Acknowledgements

Executive Summary

Acronyms and Abbreviations

Glossary

Table of Concordance

Table of Contents.....	i
List of Appendices.....	lxviii
List of Figures.....	lxxvi
List of Tables.....	cxii
List of Plates.....	clxx
1 Overview of the Proposed Project.....	1-1
1.1 Proponent Description.....	1-1
1.2 Guiding Principles.....	1-2
1.3 Need for and Purpose of the Project.....	1-3
1.3.1 Need for the Project.....	1-3
1.3.1.1 Economic Feasibility.....	1-4
1.3.1.2 Revenues.....	1-6
1.3.1.3 Employment.....	1-7
1.3.2 Purpose of the Project.....	1-7
1.4 Project History.....	1-8
1.5 Project Tenure.....	1-12
1.6 Project Setting.....	1-19
1.7 Environmental Assessment Planning Process.....	1-19
1.7.1 Changes in Project Design.....	1-23
1.7.2 Scope of the Proposed Project.....	1-23
1.8 Comparison with Other Projects.....	1-35
1.8.1 Mines in British Columbia.....	1-35
1.8.2 International Mines.....	1-36
References.....	1-39

## Table of Contents

2	Assessment Process .....	2-1
2.1	Regulatory Context .....	2-1
2.1.1	British Columbia Environmental Assessment Requirements .....	2-1
2.1.1.1	British Columbia <i>Environmental Assessment Act</i> .....	2-1
2.1.1.2	Reviewable Projects Regulation .....	2-1
2.1.2	Federal Environmental Assessment Requirements .....	2-2
2.1.2.1	<i>Canadian Environmental Assessment Act</i> .....	2-2
2.1.2.2	Law List Regulations .....	2-2
2.1.2.3	Comprehensive Study List Regulations .....	2-3
2.1.2.4	Establishing Timelines for Comprehensive Studies Regulations .....	2-3
2.1.3	Joint Provincial and Federal Environmental Assessment Process .....	2-3
2.1.3.1	Provincial Pre-application and Federal Pre-submission Environmental Assessment Phase .....	2-5
2.1.3.2	Provincial Application and Federal Environmental Impact Statement Preparation and Review Phase .....	2-14
2.1.4	Provincial Authorizations .....	2-16
2.1.4.1	Concurrent Permitting .....	2-16
2.1.5	Federal Authorizations .....	2-21
2.1.5.1	Metal Mining Effluent Regulations .....	2-21
2.1.6	Transboundary Management .....	2-24
2.1.7	Nisga'a Final Agreement .....	2-25
	References .....	2-26
3	Information Distribution and Consultation .....	3-1
3.1	Introduction .....	3-1
3.1.1	Provincial Requirements .....	3-1
3.1.2	Federal Requirements .....	3-1
3.1.3	Information Distribution and Consultation Objectives .....	3-2
3.1.4	Project Materials and Information Dissemination .....	3-2
3.2	Nisga'a Nation Information Distribution and Consultation .....	3-4
3.2.1	Chapter 10 of the Nisga'a Final Agreement .....	3-5
3.2.2	Pre-Application Consultation with Nisga'a Nation .....	3-7
3.2.2.1	Environmental Assessment Capacity Funding .....	3-7
3.2.2.2	KSM Project Environmental Assessment Working Group .....	3-7
3.2.2.3	Application Information Requirements .....	3-7
3.2.2.4	Workshops and Training .....	3-8
3.2.2.5	Nisga'a Field Assistants .....	3-8
3.2.2.6	Site Visits .....	3-8
3.2.2.7	Nisga'a Community Meetings .....	3-8
3.2.2.8	Nisga'a Sponsored Events .....	3-9
3.2.2.9	Community Investment .....	3-9
3.2.2.10	Nisga'a Nation Consultation Summary Report .....	3-9
3.2.3	Nisga'a Economic, Social, Cultural Impact Assessment .....	3-9
3.2.3.1	Surveys .....	3-9
3.2.3.2	Focus Groups .....	3-10
3.2.4	Issues Raised by Nisga'a Nation and Responses .....	3-11
3.2.5	Paragraph 6 of the Nisga'a Final Agreement .....	3-12

## Table of Contents

3.2.6	Proposed Plan for Consultation with Nisga’a Nation during the Application/EIS Review .....	3–12
3.3	First Nations Information Distribution and Consultation .....	3–13
3.3.1	Pre-Application Consultation with First Nations .....	3–14
3.3.1.1	Notification of the Project.....	3–14
3.3.1.2	KSM Project Environmental Assessment Working Group.....	3–14
3.3.1.3	Application Information Requirements.....	3–14
3.3.1.4	First Nations Field Assistants .....	3–14
3.3.1.5	Funding for Environmental Assessment Participation, Traditional Knowledge/Traditional Use and Other Studies.....	3–15
3.3.1.6	Workshops and Training.....	3–15
3.3.1.7	Site Visits.....	3–16
3.3.1.8	First Nations Consultation Summary Reports .....	3–16
3.3.2	First Nations-specific Consultation Activities.....	3–16
3.3.2.1	Tahltan Nation .....	3–16
3.3.2.2	Gitanyow First Nation.....	3–19
3.3.2.3	Gitxsan Nation .....	3–19
3.3.2.4	Skii km Lax Ha .....	3–22
3.3.3	Issues Raised by First Nations and Responses .....	3–22
3.3.4	Proposed Plan for Consultation with First Nations during the Application/EIS Review.....	3–23
3.4	Government Agency and Local Government Information Distribution and Consultation.....	3–24
3.4.1	Pre-Application Consultation with Government Agencies and Local Governments .....	3–24
3.4.1.1	KSM Project Environmental Assessment Working Group.....	3–24
3.4.1.2	Site Visits and Mine Tours.....	3–29
3.4.1.3	Application Information Requirements.....	3–29
3.4.2	Issues Raised by Government Agencies and Local Governments and Responses.....	3–30
3.4.3	Proposed Plan for Consultation with Government Agencies and Local Government during the Application/EIS Review.....	3–31
3.5	Public and Stakeholder Information Distribution and Consultation.....	3–31
3.5.1	Pre-Application Consultation with the Public and Stakeholders.....	3–32
3.5.1.1	British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office Summer 2010 Open Houses .....	3–32
3.5.1.2	Notification of Summer 2010 Open Houses.....	3–33
3.5.1.3	Application Information Requirements.....	3–33
3.5.1.4	Public Comment Period on Proposed Scope of the Comprehensive Study .....	3–34
3.5.1.5	Alaska October 2011 Open House.....	3–34
3.5.1.6	British Columbia Fall 2012 Open Houses .....	3–34
3.5.1.7	Stakeholder Consultations.....	3–34
3.5.1.8	Conferences and Panels .....	3–37
3.5.1.9	Media .....	3–38
3.5.1.10	Community Investments .....	3–39
3.5.1.11	Community Contact.....	3–40

## Table of Contents

3.5.2	Issues Raised by the Public and Stakeholders and Responses.....	3-40
3.5.3	Proposed Plan for Consultation with Public and Stakeholders during the Application/EIS Review .....	3-40
	References.....	3-42
4	Project Description .....	4-1
4.1	Introduction.....	4-1
4.2	Location and Current Access.....	4-1
4.2.1	Project Location.....	4-1
4.2.2	Current Access.....	4-2
4.3	Mineral Resources .....	4-2
4.3.1	Resource Estimate .....	4-2
4.4	Geology.....	4-6
4.4.1	Regional Geology.....	4-6
4.4.2	Property Geology.....	4-6
4.4.2.1	Stratigraphy.....	4-8
4.4.2.2	Intrusive Rocks .....	4-8
4.4.2.3	Structure.....	4-8
4.4.2.4	Faults.....	4-16
4.4.2.5	Alteration .....	4-17
4.4.2.6	Mineralization .....	4-18
4.5	Project Development Components .....	4-21
4.5.1	Mine Site .....	4-21
4.5.1.1	Waste Rock Management .....	4-22
4.5.1.2	Mitchell Pit.....	4-25
4.5.1.3	Mitchell Block Cave Mine.....	4-32
4.5.1.4	Sulphurets Pit.....	4-63
4.5.1.5	Kerr Pit.....	4-68
4.5.1.6	Iron Cap Block Cave Mine .....	4-73
4.5.1.7	Mitchell Rock Storage Facility .....	4-97
4.5.1.8	McTagg Rock Storage Facility .....	4-104
4.5.1.9	Ore Stockpiles.....	4-109
4.5.1.10	Mitchell Ore Preparation Complex .....	4-109
4.5.1.11	Mine Site Water Management Facilities.....	4-113
4.5.1.12	Sulphurets-Mitchell Conveyor Tunnel.....	4-158
4.5.1.13	Mitchell Truck Shop .....	4-163
4.5.1.14	Permanent Avalanche Protection Measures.....	4-163
4.5.1.15	Sulphurets Laydown Area.....	4-165
4.5.2	Mitchell-Treaty Twinned Tunnels.....	4-165
4.5.2.1	Geology.....	4-165
4.5.2.2	Design .....	4-170
4.5.2.3	Construction.....	4-170
4.5.2.4	Schedule.....	4-172
4.5.2.5	Geohazards.....	4-173
4.5.2.6	Ventilation.....	4-173
4.5.2.7	Safety Considerations .....	4-175
4.5.2.8	Ore Conveyor.....	4-175
4.5.2.9	Diesel Pipeline .....	4-175
4.5.2.10	Transmission Line.....	4-176

## Table of Contents

4.5.3	Processing and Tailing Management Area.....	4-176
4.5.3.1	Tunnel Portal.....	4-178
4.5.3.2	Overland Conveyor.....	4-178
4.5.3.3	Treaty Ore Preparation Complex.....	4-178
4.5.3.4	Substation.....	4-184
4.5.3.5	Fuel Storage and Distribution.....	4-184
4.5.3.6	Cold Storage/Reagent Building.....	4-185
4.5.3.7	Warehouse and Maintenance Building.....	4-185
4.5.3.8	Treaty Process Plant.....	4-185
4.5.3.9	Concentrate Loadout.....	4-194
4.5.3.10	Tailing Management Facility.....	4-194
4.5.3.11	Tailing Energy Recovery.....	4-226
4.5.3.12	Operational Monitoring.....	4-226
4.5.4	Access Roads.....	4-227
4.5.4.1	Coulter Creek Access Road.....	4-227
4.5.4.2	Treaty Creek Access Road.....	4-242
4.5.4.3	Temporary Frank Mackie Glacier Access Route.....	4-260
4.5.5	Quarry and Borrow Sources.....	4-263
4.5.5.1	Roads.....	4-263
4.5.5.2	Water Storage Dam.....	4-263
4.5.5.3	Tailing Management Facility.....	4-266
4.5.6	Soil and Overburden Salvage.....	4-266
4.5.7	Condemnation.....	4-268
4.5.7.1	Mine Site.....	4-268
4.5.7.2	Sulphurets Laydown Area.....	4-268
4.5.7.3	Mitchell Rock Storage Facility.....	4-270
4.5.7.4	McTagg Rock Storage Facility.....	4-270
4.5.7.5	Mitchell Water Storage Dam.....	4-270
4.5.7.6	Mitchell Ore Preparation Complex.....	4-271
4.5.7.7	Other Facilities.....	4-271
4.5.7.8	Processing and Tailing Management Area.....	4-271
4.6	Mining Equipment.....	4-273
4.6.1	Open Pit.....	4-273
4.6.2	Underground.....	4-275
4.6.2.1	Mitchell Block Cave.....	4-275
4.6.2.2	Iron Cap Block Cave Mine.....	4-275
4.7	Explosives.....	4-276
4.7.1	Overview.....	4-276
4.7.2	Explosives Manufacturing and Storage Locations.....	4-277
4.7.3	Ammonium Nitrate and Diesel Storage.....	4-277
4.7.4	Storage of Other Chemicals.....	4-277
4.7.5	Manufacturing Process.....	4-278
4.7.6	Geohazards.....	4-278
4.7.7	Explosives Handling and Use.....	4-278
4.8	Construction and Operating Camps.....	4-279
4.8.1	Construction Camps.....	4-279
4.8.2	Operating Camps.....	4-283
4.8.2.1	Treaty Operating Camp.....	4-283
4.8.2.2	Mitchell Operating Camp.....	4-284

## Table of Contents

4.8.3	Sewage and Wastewater Treatment.....	4-284
4.8.3.1	Wastewater Treatment Systems.....	4-287
4.9	Ancillary Activities.....	4-289
4.9.1	Electrical Power Supply and Transmission.....	4-289
4.9.2	Landfills.....	4-295
4.9.3	Concentrate Transportation.....	4-295
4.9.4	Port of Stewart Facilities.....	4-295
4.9.5	Procurement.....	4-296
4.9.5.1	Contract Packaging and Strategy.....	4-296
4.9.6	Dangerous Goods and Hazardous Materials.....	4-299
4.9.7	Personnel Requirements.....	4-300
4.10	Project Development Schedule.....	4-305
4.11	Project Capital Costs.....	4-310
	References.....	4-312
5	Environmental Assessment Methodology.....	5-1
5.1	Key Terms.....	5-1
5.2	Assessment Objectives and Methods.....	5-2
5.2.1	Objectives.....	5-2
5.2.2	Federal and Provincial Environmental Assessment Requirements.....	5-2
5.2.3	Methods Overview.....	5-4
5.2.4	Baseline Setting.....	5-4
5.2.5	Historical Activities on Project Setting.....	5-4
5.2.6	Summary of Land Use Planning Objectives.....	5-4
5.2.7	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	5-5
5.2.7.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	5-5
5.2.7.2	Temporal Boundaries.....	5-5
5.2.8	Valued Component Selection.....	5-5
5.2.9	Identifying Potential Project-related Effects.....	5-8
5.2.10	Potential Effects and Mitigation.....	5-11
5.2.11	Determining the Significance of Residual Effects.....	5-12
5.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment.....	5-16
5.3.1	Issue Scoping.....	5-19
5.3.2	Identification of Potential Cumulative Effects.....	5-19
5.3.3	The Potential for Cumulative Residual Effects, Mitigation, and Significance.....	5-19
5.3.4	Summary of Effects Assessment.....	5-20
5.4	Human Actions Considered.....	5-20
5.4.1	Spatial Boundaries for Cumulative Effects.....	5-23
5.4.2	Temporal Boundaries for Cumulative Effects.....	5-24
5.4.3	Past Industrial Projects.....	5-27
5.4.3.1	Eskay Creek Mine.....	5-28
5.4.3.2	Granduc Mine (Past Producer).....	5-28
5.4.3.3	Johnny Mountain Mine.....	5-29
5.4.3.4	Kitsault Mine (Past Producer).....	5-30
5.4.3.5	Snip Mine.....	5-30
5.4.3.6	Sulphurets Project.....	5-31
5.4.3.7	Swamp Point Aggregate Mine.....	5-32

## Table of Contents

5.4.4	Present Projects .....	5-32
5.4.4.1	Forrest Kerr Hydroelectric Power .....	5-33
5.4.4.2	Long Lake Hydroelectric .....	5-36
5.4.4.3	Northwest Transmission Line .....	5-37
5.4.4.4	Red Chris Mine .....	5-37
5.4.4.5	Wolverine Mine Project .....	5-38
5.4.5	Reasonably Foreseeable Future Projects .....	5-39
5.4.5.1	Arctos Anthracite Coal Project .....	5-39
5.4.5.2	Bear River Gravel .....	5-42
5.4.5.3	Bronson Slope Mine .....	5-43
5.4.5.4	Brucejack Mine .....	5-45
5.4.5.5	Galore Creek Mine .....	5-46
5.4.5.6	Granduc Copper Mine .....	5-47
5.4.5.7	Kitsault Mine .....	5-47
5.4.5.8	Kutcho Mine .....	5-48
5.4.5.9	McLymont Creek Hydroelectric Project .....	5-50
5.4.5.10	Schaft Creek Mine .....	5-50
5.4.5.11	Snowfield Project .....	5-51
5.4.5.12	Storie Moly Mine .....	5-52
5.4.5.13	Treaty Creek Hydroelectric Project .....	5-53
5.4.5.14	Turnagain Mine .....	5-53
5.4.6	Land Use Activities .....	5-55
5.4.6.1	Agriculture .....	5-56
5.4.6.2	Commercial and Guided Fishing .....	5-56
5.4.6.3	Guide Outfitting (Hunting) .....	5-56
5.4.6.4	Aboriginal Harvest .....	5-57
5.4.6.5	Trapping .....	5-58
5.4.6.6	Mineral, Oil, and Gas Exploration .....	5-59
5.4.6.7	Recreation and Tourism .....	5-59
5.4.6.8	Forestry .....	5-60
5.4.6.9	Road Access and Traffic .....	5-62
	References .....	5-71
6	Greenhouse Gas Emissions (Climate Change) .....	6-1
6.1	Greenhouse Gas (Climate Change) Setting .....	6-2
6.1.1	Climate Change Overview .....	6-2
6.1.1.1	Scientific Background .....	6-2
6.1.1.2	Climate Change Impacts and Adaptation .....	6-5
6.1.1.3	Traditional Knowledge and Understanding and Nisga'a Knowledge of Climate Change .....	6-5
6.1.2	Legislation and Best Practices Context .....	6-8
6.1.2.1	Regulatory Context .....	6-8
6.1.2.2	Greenhouse Gas Emission Reporting and Reduction Requirements .....	6-11
6.2	Historical Activities .....	6-12
6.2.1	The International Greenhouse Gas Setting .....	6-12
6.2.2	The National and Provincial Greenhouse Gas Setting .....	6-15
6.3	Land Use Planning Objectives .....	6-17
6.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries .....	6-17

## Table of Contents

	6.4.1 Spatial Boundaries.....	6-17
	6.4.2 Temporal Boundaries .....	6-18
6.5	Valued Components.....	6-18
	6.5.1 Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	6-18
	6.5.2 Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	6-19
6.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Greenhouse Gases .....	6-19
	6.6.1 Facility Level and Land-use Change Scoping Methodology.....	6-19
	6.6.1.1 Facility Level Atmospheric GHG Emission Effects Scoping Summary.....	6-19
	6.6.1.2 Land-use Change Atmospheric GHG Emission Effects Scoping Summary.....	6-23
	6.6.2 KSM Project Greenhouse Gas Scoping across Project Phases.....	6-25
	6.6.2.1 Construction.....	6-27
	6.6.2.2 Operation.....	6-28
	6.6.2.3 Closure .....	6-28
	6.6.2.4 Post-closure.....	6-28
6.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Greenhouse Gases .....	6-29
	6.7.1 Potential Effects of Project on Greenhouse Gas Emissions .....	6-29
	6.7.1.1 Facility-level Greenhouse Gas Emissions Assessment.....	6-29
	6.7.1.2 Land-use Change Greenhouse Gas Emissions Assessment .....	6-31
	6.7.1.3 KSM Project Greenhouse Gas Assessment Summary .....	6-35
	6.7.2 Mitigation for Greenhouse Gas Emissions.....	6-35
	6.7.2.1 Objective .....	6-35
	6.7.2.2 Targets.....	6-36
	6.7.2.3 Actions to Avoid, Control, and Minimize Effects .....	6-36
	6.7.2.4 Summary .....	6-42
	6.7.3 Potential for Residual Effects .....	6-45
	6.7.3.1 Residual Effects due to Increased Atmospheric Greenhouse Gas Levels from the Project.....	6-45
	6.7.4 Comparison of Project Greenhouse Gas Emission Levels .....	6-45
	6.7.4.1 Provincial, National, and International Comparison of Project Greenhouse Gas Emissions .....	6-45
	6.7.4.2 Sector Comparison.....	6-48
6.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Greenhouse Gases.....	6-49
	6.8.1 Residual Effect Descriptors for Effects for Greenhouse Gases.....	6-49
	6.8.2 Residual Effects Assessment on Atmospheric Greenhouse Gases.....	6-52
	6.8.2.1 Significance of Residual Effect of Project Emissions on Atmospheric Greenhouse Gas Levels.....	6-53
	6.8.2.2 Overall Effect on Atmospheric Greenhouse Gas Levels by the Project .....	6-55
6.9	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects of Project Greenhouse Gas Emissions.....	6-55
6.10	Greenhouse Gas (Climate Change) Conclusions .....	6-56
	References.....	6-57
<b>7</b>	<b>Air Quality.....</b>	<b>7-1</b>
	7.1 Climate and Air Quality Setting .....	7-1
	7.1.1 Regional Climate and Air Quality .....	7-1
	7.1.2 Air Quality Legislation, Regulations, and Guidelines.....	7-2



## Table of Contents

7.1.3	Baseline Climate and Air Quality – Characterization Methodology .....	7–5
7.1.3.1	Baseline Study Area.....	7–5
7.1.3.2	Methods and Data Sources.....	7–6
7.1.3.3	Baseline Climate in the Regional Study Area.....	7–8
7.1.3.4	Baseline Air Quality in the Regional Study Area .....	7–16
7.2	Historical Activities .....	7–19
7.3	Land Use and Airshed Planning Objectives .....	7–19
7.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	7–20
7.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	7–20
7.4.2	Temporal Boundaries .....	7–20
7.5	Valued Components.....	7–21
7.5.1	Overview of Valued Component Selection .....	7–21
7.5.2	Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	7–22
7.5.3	Valued Components Excluded from Further Assessment .....	7–22
7.6	Scoping of Potential Effects.....	7–22
7.7	Potential Effects and Mitigation Options.....	7–24
7.7.1	Mitigating Specific Effects.....	7–25
7.7.1.1	Unpaved Access Roads.....	7–25
7.7.1.2	Crushers .....	7–26
7.7.1.3	Equipment and Vehicles .....	7–26
7.7.1.4	Generators and Incinerators .....	7–27
7.7.1.5	Ore Stockpiles.....	7–27
7.7.1.6	Mitchell-Treaty Twinned Tunnels .....	7–28
7.7.2	Summary of Potential Effects and Proposed Mitigation .....	7–28
7.8	Potential Residual Air Quality Effects.....	7–28
7.8.1	Approach to Residual Effects Assessment .....	7–28
7.8.2	Air Emissions Inventory.....	7–33
7.8.2.1	Construction.....	7–33
7.8.2.2	Operation.....	7–41
7.8.3	Air Emissions Dispersion Modelling .....	7–43
7.8.3.1	Air Quality Modelling Approach.....	7–43
7.8.3.2	Air Quality Modelling Results – Construction Phase.....	7–48
7.8.3.3	Air Quality Modelling Results – Operation .....	7–76
7.9	Significance of Residual Air Quality Effects.....	7–92
7.9.1	Approach to Significance Determination .....	7–92
7.9.2	Construction Phase .....	7–101
7.9.3	Operation Phase.....	7–101
7.9.4	Overall Project.....	7–103
7.10	Potential Cumulative Air Quality Effects .....	7–103
7.10.1	Scoping of Cumulative Air Quality Effects Assessment.....	7–103
7.10.1.1	Spatial Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions .....	7–103
7.10.1.2	Temporal Linkages with Other Projects and Human Activities.....	7–106
7.10.2	Cumulative Effect of Change in Ambient Air Quality .....	7–106
7.10.2.1	Forrest Kerr Hydroelectric.....	7–106
7.10.2.2	Northwest Transmission Line .....	7–108
7.10.2.3	Snowfield Project.....	7–108
7.10.2.4	Brucejack Gold Mine Project.....	7–108

## Table of Contents

7.10.3	Significance Determination of Residual Cumulative Effects for Air Quality .....	7-108
7.11	Summary of Assessment of Potential Air Quality Effects .....	7-109
7.12	Air Quality Conclusions .....	7-109
	References .....	7-114
<b>8</b>	<b>Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils .....</b>	<b>8-1</b>
8.1	Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils Setting .....	8-1
8.1.1	Local Study Area .....	8-1
8.1.2	Relevant Legislation and Guidelines .....	8-2
8.1.3	Methods and Information Sources .....	8-4
8.1.4	Surficial Geology and Terrain .....	8-4
8.1.5	Soils .....	8-6
8.1.6	Soil Analytical Results .....	8-15
8.2	Historical Activities .....	8-17
8.3	Land Use Planning Objectives .....	8-17
8.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries .....	8-18
8.4.1	Spatial Boundaries .....	8-18
8.4.2	Temporal Boundaries .....	8-21
8.5	Valued Components .....	8-22
8.5.1	Valued Components Included in Assessment .....	8-22
8.5.2	Valued Components Excluded from Assessment .....	8-23
8.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils .....	8-24
8.6.1	Construction .....	8-27
8.6.2	Operation .....	8-27
8.6.3	Closure .....	8-28
8.6.4	Post-closure .....	8-28
8.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils .....	8-28
8.7.1	Loss of Soil Quantity .....	8-28
8.7.1.1	Mitigation for Loss of Ecologically Functional Soil .....	8-32
8.7.1.2	Soil Quantity: Potential Residual Effects due to Loss of Ecologically Functional Soil Area and Soil Bulk Erosion .....	8-33
8.7.2	Degradation of Soil Quality .....	8-33
8.7.2.1	Mitigation for Soil Degradation .....	8-34
8.7.2.2	Soil Quality: Potential Residual Effects due to Soil Degradation .....	8-51
8.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils .....	8-51
8.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors for Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils .....	8-52
8.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Soil Quantity .....	8-52
8.8.2.1	Permanent Loss of Ecologically Functional Soil under the Footprints of the Remaining Mine Components .....	8-52
8.8.2.2	Permanent Loss of Soil Bulk due to Erosion .....	8-59
8.8.3	Residual Effects Assessment for Soil Quality .....	8-60
8.8.3.1	Soil Degradation .....	8-60
8.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils .....	8-65
8.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects .....	8-65
8.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions .....	8-65

## Table of Contents

	8.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions .....	8-66
	8.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Soil Quantity .....	8-72
	8.9.2.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Soil Quantity That Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	8-75
	8.9.2.2	Cumulative Effect of Loss of Ecologically Functional Soil .....	8-75
	8.9.2.3	Overall Cumulative Effect on Soil Quantity .....	8-77
	8.9.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Loss of Soil Quality .....	8-78
	8.9.3.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Soil Quality Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	8-78
	8.9.3.2	Cumulative Effect of Degradation of Soil Quality .....	8-78
	8.9.3.3	Overall Cumulative Effect on Soil Quality .....	8-83
8.10	Summary Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils.....		8-83
8.11	Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils – Conclusions.....		8-84
	References.....		8-87
<b>9</b>	<b>Geohazards.....</b>		<b>9-1</b>
	9.1	Geohazards Setting .....	9-1
	9.1.1	Physiography .....	9-1
	9.1.2	Geology .....	9-1
	9.1.3	Climate .....	9-3
	9.1.4	Terrain Stability and Geohazard Baseline Studies .....	9-3
	9.1.4.1	Geohazards Information, Analysis, and Reports in the Application.....	9-7
	9.1.4.2	Summary of Geohazard Incidence and Risk.....	9-9
	9.1.4.3	Summary of Results of Geohazards Baseline Studies .....	9-12
	9.2	Historical Activities .....	9-14
	9.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	9-15
	9.3.1	Protected Areas.....	9-15
	9.3.2	Legislation and Best Management Practices .....	9-17
	9.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	9-17
	9.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	9-17
	9.4.2	Temporal Boundaries .....	9-22
	9.5	Valued Components.....	9-22
	9.5.1	Valued Components included in the Assessment.....	9-25
	9.5.2	Valued Components excluded from the Assessment.....	9-25
	9.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Geohazards .....	9-29
	9.6.1	Terrain Stability.....	9-29
	9.6.2	Snow Avalanches .....	9-31
	9.6.3	Construction .....	9-31
	9.6.4	Operation.....	9-32
	9.6.5	Closure and Post-closure .....	9-32
	9.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Terrain Stability .....	9-32
	9.7.1	Potential Instability of Road Sections.....	9-50
	9.7.1.1	Treaty Creek Access Road.....	9-50
	9.7.1.2	North Treaty Upper and Lower Road .....	9-50
	9.7.1.3	Coulter Creek Access Road .....	9-59
	9.7.2	Mine Site Infrastructure.....	9-59

## Table of Contents

	9.7.3 Processing and Tailing Management Area Infrastructure .....	9-60
9.8	Summary of Required Mitigation and Monitoring .....	9-61
	9.8.1 Mitigation and Monitoring — Mine Site .....	9-62
	9.8.2 Mitigation and Monitoring — Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	9-65
	9.8.3 Mitigation and Monitoring — Treaty Creek Access Road, North Treaty Access Road, and Coulter Creek Access Road .....	9-65
9.9	Geohazards Conclusions .....	9-67
	References .....	9-68
<b>10</b>	<b>Geochemistry .....</b>	<b>10-1</b>
	10.1 Geochemistry Setting .....	10-1
	10.1.1 Regional Overview .....	10-1
	10.1.2 Baseline Studies .....	10-3
	10.1.2.1 Characterization Method .....	10-3
	10.1.2.2 Mine Site Characterization .....	10-6
	10.1.2.3 Tailing Characterization .....	10-28
	10.1.2.4 Non-deposit Material Characterization .....	10-34
10.2	Source Terms for Water Quality Modelling .....	10-43
	10.2.1 Source Term Methodology .....	10-43
	10.2.1.1 Data Sources .....	10-43
	10.2.1.2 Chemical Loading Calculations .....	10-43
	10.2.1.3 Detection Limits .....	10-44
	10.2.2 Mine Site .....	10-44
	10.2.2.1 Scaling Factor .....	10-44
	10.2.2.2 McTagg and Mitchell Rock Storage Facilities .....	10-46
	10.2.2.3 Sulphurets Pit Backfill .....	10-51
	10.2.2.4 Pit Wall Runoff .....	10-52
	10.2.2.5 Mitchell Pit Lake .....	10-55
	10.2.2.6 Block Caving .....	10-55
	10.2.3 Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	10-58
	10.2.3.1 Operation .....	10-58
	10.2.3.2 Closure .....	10-60
	10.2.3.3 Post-closure .....	10-60
10.3	Geochemistry Conclusions .....	10-61
	References .....	10-62
<b>11</b>	<b>Groundwater Quantity .....</b>	<b>11-1</b>
	11.1 Project Setting .....	11-1
	11.1.1 Overview .....	11-1
	11.1.2 Methods to Characterize Groundwater Quantity .....	11-2
	11.1.3 Mine Site .....	11-3
	11.1.4 Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	11-8
11.2	Historical Activities .....	11-16
11.3	Land Use Planning Objectives .....	11-16
11.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries .....	11-20
	11.4.1 Spatial Boundaries .....	11-20
	11.4.2 Temporal Boundaries .....	11-24

## Table of Contents

	11.4.2.1 Mine Site Local Study Area Temporal Domain .....	11-24
	11.4.2.2 Processing and Tailing Management Area Local Study Area Temporal Domain .....	11-24
11.5	Valued Components.....	11-24
	11.5.1 Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	11-25
	11.5.2 Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	11-25
11.6	Scoping of Potential Effects on Groundwater Quantity.....	11-26
	11.6.1 Construction .....	11-26
	11.6.2 Operation.....	11-28
	11.6.3 Closure and Post-closure .....	11-29
11.7	Potential for Residual Effects on Groundwater Quantity .....	11-31
	11.7.1 Changes in Groundwater Levels and Flow Patterns due to Alterations in Boundary Conditions and Mitigation.....	11-31
	11.7.2 Changes in Groundwater Levels and Flow Patterns due to Alterations of Permeability and Mitigation.....	11-33
	11.7.3 Changes to Groundwater Flow and Water Levels Predicted by Modelling Exercises .....	11-33
	11.7.3.1 Mine Site Local Study Area.....	11-34
	11.7.3.2 Processing and Tailing Management Area Local Study Area .....	11-47
	11.7.3.3 Tunnels and Submerged Mine Works.....	11-57
	11.7.4 Identified Residual Effects .....	11-58
11.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Groundwater Quantity .....	11-58
	11.8.1 Residual Effect Descriptors for Groundwater Quantity .....	11-58
	11.8.2 Residual Effects Assessment for Groundwater Quantity .....	11-61
	11.8.2.1 Pit and Block Cave Mine Dewatering and Water Level Management.....	11-61
	11.8.2.2 Water Level Mounding in the Mitchell and McTagg Rock Storage Facility .....	11-64
	11.8.2.3 Sulphurets Pit and Backfill Rock Storage Facility.....	11-64
	11.8.2.4 Development of Artificial Reservoirs and Implementation of Associated Seepage Control Mechanisms .....	11-65
	11.8.2.5 Overall Effect on Groundwater Quantity.....	11-66
11.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Groundwater Quantity.....	11-67
	11.9.1 Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	11-67
	11.9.1.1 Spatial Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	11-67
	11.9.1.2 Temporal Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	11-67
	11.9.2 Cumulative Effects Assessment for Groundwater Quantity.....	11-70
	11.9.2.1 Project-specific Residual Effects on Groundwater Quantity that are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	11-70
	11.9.2.2 Cumulative Effects due to Pit Dewatering for the Planned Snowfield Project.....	11-71
	11.9.2.3 Overall Cumulative Effect on Groundwater Quantity .....	11-75
11.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Groundwater Quantity .....	11-75
11.11	Groundwater Quantity Conclusions.....	11-75
	References.....	11-78

## Table of Contents

12	Groundwater Quality.....	12-1
12.1	Project Setting.....	12-1
12.1.1	Overview of Baseline Groundwater Studies.....	12-1
12.1.2	Methods to Characterize Groundwater Quality.....	12-2
12.1.3	Mine Site.....	12-5
12.1.4	Processing and Tailing Management Area.....	12-6
12.2	Historical Activities.....	12-17
12.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	12-17
12.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	12-19
12.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	12-19
12.4.2	Temporal Boundaries.....	12-23
12.4.2.1	Mine Site Local Study Area Temporal Domain.....	12-23
12.4.2.2	Processing and Tailing Management Area Local Study Area Temporal Domain.....	12-24
12.5	Valued Components.....	12-25
12.5.1	Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	12-26
12.5.2	Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	12-26
12.6	Scoping of Potential Effects on Groundwater Quality.....	12-26
12.6.1	Construction.....	12-28
12.6.2	Operation.....	12-29
12.6.3	Closure and Post-closure.....	12-30
12.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Groundwater Quality.....	12-31
12.7.1	Groundwater Quality Degradation due to Seepage of Contact Water.....	12-31
12.7.1.1	Mitigation for Degradation of Groundwater Quality due to Seepage of Contact Water.....	12-32
12.7.1.2	Residual Effects on Groundwater Quality.....	12-42
12.7.2	Releases of Controlled Substances.....	12-70
12.7.2.1	Mitigation for Releases of Controlled Substances.....	12-71
12.7.2.2	Potential for Residual Effects.....	12-71
12.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Groundwater Quality.....	12-71
12.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors for Groundwater Quality.....	12-71
12.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Groundwater Quality.....	12-72
12.8.2.1	Seepage of Contact Water from the Mitchell and McTagg Rock Storage Facilities.....	12-77
12.8.2.2	Iron Cap Block Cave Mine.....	12-78
12.8.2.3	Water Storage Facility.....	12-83
12.8.2.4	Seepage of Contact Water from the Tailing Management Facility.....	12-84
12.8.2.5	Overall Effect on Groundwater Quality.....	12-89
12.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Groundwater Quality.....	12-89
12.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	12-89
12.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	12-89
12.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	12-90
12.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Groundwater Quality.....	12-90
12.9.2.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Groundwater Quality that are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	12-93

## Table of Contents

	12.9.2.2 Cumulative Effect of Groundwater Quality Degradation Due to Seepage of Contact Water from the Planned Snowfield Project.....	12-95
	12.9.2.3 Overall Cumulative Effect on Groundwater Quality .....	12-99
12.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Groundwater Quality .....	12-99
12.11	Groundwater Quality Conclusions.....	12-100
	References.....	12-103
<b>13</b>	<b>Surface Water Quantity .....</b>	<b>13-1</b>
13.1	Surface Water Quantity Setting .....	13-1
	13.1.1 Overview .....	13-1
	13.1.2 Hydrometric Monitoring Stations.....	13-2
	13.1.3 Summary of Baseline Surface Water Hydrology Program.....	13-8
	13.1.4 Summary of Baseline Glacial Monitoring Program .....	13-13
	13.1.5 Glacier Meltwater Contribution from Mitchell Glacier.....	13-15
	13.1.6 Legislation .....	13-15
13.2	Historical Activities .....	13-16
	13.2.1 Mine Site .....	13-16
	13.2.2 Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	13-16
13.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	13-17
13.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	13-19
	13.4.1 Spatial Boundaries.....	13-19
	13.4.1.1 Local Study Area .....	13-19
	13.4.1.2 Regional Study Area.....	13-19
	13.4.2 Temporal Boundaries .....	13-25
13.5	Valued Components.....	13-41
	13.5.1 Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	13-41
	13.5.2 Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	13-42
13.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Surface Water Quantity .....	13-42
	13.6.1 Construction .....	13-45
	13.6.2 Operation.....	13-45
	13.6.3 Closure.....	13-46
	13.6.4 Post-closure .....	13-46
	13.6.5 Project Effects on Mitchell Glacier .....	13-46
13.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Surface Water Quantity.....	13-48
	13.7.1 Changes in Annual Flow Volumes.....	13-48
	13.7.1.1 Mitigation for Changes in Annual Flow Volumes.....	13-49
	13.7.1.2 Residual Effects from Changes in Annual Flow Volumes .....	13-51
	13.7.2 Changes in Monthly Flow Distribution .....	13-61
	13.7.2.1 Mitigation for Changes in Monthly Flow Distribution.....	13-69
	13.7.2.2 Residual Effects from Changes in Monthly Flow Distribution... ..	13-69
	13.7.3 Changes in Peak Flows.....	13-84
	13.7.3.1 Mitigation for Changes in Peak Flows.....	13-85
	13.7.3.2 Potential for Residual Effects from Changes in Peak Flows ..	13-85
	13.7.4 Changes in Low Flows .....	13-100
	13.7.4.1 Mitigation for Changes in Low Flows .....	13-100
	13.7.4.2 Residual Effects from changes in Low Flows.....	13-101
13.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Surface Water Quantity .....	13-127

## Table of Contents

13.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors for Surface Water Quantity.....	13-127
13.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Streamflows within the Processing and Tailing Management Area Local Study Area .....	13-127
13.8.2.1	Changes in Annual Flow Volumes .....	13-127
13.8.2.2	Changes in Monthly Flow Distribution .....	13-128
13.8.2.3	Changes in Peak Flows .....	13-133
13.8.2.4	Changes in Low Flows.....	13-134
13.8.2.5	Overall Effect on Streamflows with the Processing and Tailing Management Area Local Study Area .....	13-135
13.8.3	Residual Effects Assessment for Streamflows within the Mine Site Local Study Area.....	13-135
13.8.3.1	Changes in Annual Flow Volumes .....	13-135
13.8.3.2	Changes in Monthly Flow Distribution .....	13-139
13.8.3.3	Changes in Peak Flows .....	13-140
13.8.3.4	Changes in Low Flows.....	13-141
13.8.3.5	Overall Effect on Streamflows within the Mine Site Local Study Area .....	13-142
13.8.4	Residual Effects Assessment for Streamflows within the Bell-Irving River Regional Study Area.....	13-143
13.8.4.1	Changes in Annual Flow Volumes .....	13-143
13.8.4.2	Changes in Monthly Flow Distribution .....	13-143
13.8.4.3	Changes in Peak Flows .....	13-146
13.8.4.4	Changes in Low Flows.....	13-147
13.8.4.5	Overall Effect on Streamflows within the Bell-Irving River Regional Study Area.....	13-147
13.8.5	Residual Effects Assessment for Streamflows within the Unuk River Regional Study Area .....	13-147
13.8.5.1	Changes in Annual Flow Volumes .....	13-151
13.8.5.2	Changes in Monthly Flow Distribution .....	13-151
13.8.5.3	Changes in Peak Flows .....	13-152
13.8.5.4	Changes in Low Flows.....	13-153
13.8.5.5	Overall Effect on Streamflows within the Unuk River Regional Study Area.....	13-154
13.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Surface Water Quantity .....	13-154
13.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	13-154
13.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions....	13-154
13.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions	13-157
13.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Streamflows within the Mine Site.....	13-158
13.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Surface Water Quantity .....	13-158
13.11	Surface Water Quantity Conclusions.....	13-158
	References.....	13-164
14	Surface Water Quality .....	14-1
14.1	Surface Water Quality Setting .....	14-1
14.1.1	Overview .....	14-1
14.1.2	Streams .....	14-2
14.1.2.1	Mine Site.....	14-2
14.1.2.2	Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	14-11



## Table of Contents

14.1.3	Lakes.....	14-18
14.1.3.1	Mine Site.....	14-20
14.1.3.2	Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	14-20
14.2	Historical Activities.....	14-20
14.2.1	Mine Site .....	14-20
14.2.2	Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	14-23
14.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	14-23
14.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	14-24
14.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	14-24
14.4.2	Temporal Boundaries .....	14-24
14.5	Valued Components .....	14-28
14.5.1	Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	14-28
14.5.2	Valued Components Excluded from Further Assessment.....	14-29
14.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Surface Water Quality .....	14-29
14.6.1	Construction .....	14-31
14.6.2	Operation.....	14-32
14.6.3	Closure.....	14-32
14.6.4	Post-closure .....	14-33
14.7	Potential for Residual Effects on Surface Water Quality .....	14-33
14.7.1	Degradation of Water Quality .....	14-34
14.7.1.1	Assessment of Degradation of Water Quality outside Water Management Structures.....	14-34
14.7.1.2	Predictive Water Quality Modelling.....	14-35
14.7.2	Mitigation for Degradation of Water Quality.....	14-108
14.7.2.1	Metal Leaching / Acid Rock Drainage .....	14-108
14.7.2.2	Effluent Discharge .....	14-115
14.7.2.3	Sedimentation and Erosion .....	14-120
14.7.2.4	Leaching of Blasting Residues.....	14-123
14.7.2.5	Sewage.....	14-123
14.7.2.6	Spills .....	14-124
14.7.2.7	Seepage.....	14-124
14.7.2.8	Mine Site.....	14-124
14.7.2.9	Atmospheric Deposition .....	14-125
14.7.2.10	Potential for Residual Effects .....	14-125
14.7.3	Surface Water Quality: Potential Residual Effects due to Degradation of Surface Water Quality.....	14-125
14.7.3.1	Potential Residual Effects outside Water Management Structures .....	14-125
14.7.3.2	Potential Residual Effects due to Effluent Quality .....	14-126
14.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Surface Water Quality .....	14-261
14.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors for Surface Water Quality.....	14-261
14.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Surface Water Quality .....	14-262
14.8.2.1	Degradation of Surface Water Quality due to Sedimentation and Erosion.....	14-262
14.8.2.2	Degradation of Surface Water Quality near Access Corridors .....	14-262
14.8.2.3	Degradation of Water Quality in Sulphurets Creek .....	14-267
14.8.2.4	Degradation of Water Quality in Unuk River.....	14-267
14.8.2.5	Degradation of Water Quality in Treaty Watershed .....	14-268

## Table of Contents

		14.8.2.6 Degradation of Water Quality in Teigen Watershed.....	14-269
		14.8.2.7 Overall Effect on Surface Water Quality .....	14-269
14.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Surface Water Quality .....		14-270
	14.9.1 Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....		14-270
	14.9.1.1 Spatial Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions...		14-270
	14.9.1.2 Temporal Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions .....		14-272
	14.9.2 Cumulative Effects Assessment for Surface Water Quality .....		14-273
	14.9.2.1 Project-specific Residual Effects on Surface Water Quality that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....		14-273
	14.9.2.2 Cumulative Effect of Degradation of Water Quality .....		14-273
	14.9.2.3 Overall Cumulative Effect on Surface Water Quality .....		14-275
14.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Surface Water Quality .....		14-275
14.11	Surface Water Quality Conclusions.....		14-275
	References.....		14-282
15	Fish and Aquatic Habitat .....		15-1
	15.1 Fish and Aquatic Habitat Setting .....		15-1
	15.1.1 Overview .....		15-1
	15.1.2 Legislation and Regulation.....		15-8
	15.1.2.1 <i>Fisheries Act</i> .....		15-8
	15.1.2.2 Metal Mining Effluent Regulations .....		15-9
	15.1.2.3 <i>Environmental Management Act</i> .....		15-10
	15.1.2.4 <i>Water Act</i> .....		15-11
	15.1.2.5 Municipal Wastewater Regulation and Sewerage Systems Regulation.....		15-11
	15.1.3 Baseline Study Area Program.....		15-12
	15.1.4 Fish and Fish Habitat.....		15-19
	15.1.4.1 Baseline Study Methods.....		15-19
	15.1.4.2 Baseline Study Area Fish Community.....		15-20
	15.1.4.3 Access Roads and Transmission Line.....		15-50
	15.1.4.4 Tailing Management Facility.....		15-56
	15.1.4.5 Mine Site.....		15-62
	15.1.5 Aquatic Resources.....		15-63
	15.1.5.1 Overview.....		15-63
	15.1.5.2 Streams.....		15-68
	15.1.5.3 Lakes.....		15-79
15.2	Historical Activities .....		15-84
15.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....		15-85
	15.3.1 Cassiar Iskut-Stikine Land and Resource Management Plan .....		15-85
	15.3.2 Nass South Sustainable Resource Management Plan .....		15-86
15.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....		15-86
	15.4.1 Spatial Boundaries.....		15-86
	15.4.2 Temporal Boundaries .....		15-89
15.5	Valued Components.....		15-89
	15.5.1 Valued Components Included in Assessment.....		15-90
	15.5.2 Fish Species Life History Types and Habitat Preferences.....		15-92
	15.5.3 Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....		15-92

## Table of Contents

15.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Fish and Aquatic Habitat.....	15-104
15.6.1	Review of Application Information Requirements.....	15-104
15.6.2	Overview of Effect Types.....	15-105
15.6.3	Construction .....	15-113
15.6.4	Operation.....	15-114
15.6.5	Closure and Post-closure .....	15-114
15.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Fish and Aquatic Habitat.....	15-114
15.7.1	Direct Mortality.....	15-115
15.7.1.1	Effect of Direct Mortality .....	15-115
15.7.1.2	Mitigation for Direct Mortality.....	15-116
15.7.1.3	Potential for Residual Effects .....	15-117
15.7.1.4	Bull Trout: Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality .....	15-117
15.7.1.5	Dolly Varden: Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality .....	15-117
15.7.1.6	Rainbow Trout/Steelhead: Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality .....	15-120
15.7.1.7	Pacific Salmon: Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality .....	15-120
15.7.2	Noise.....	15-120
15.7.2.1	Effect of Noise.....	15-120
15.7.2.2	Mitigation for Noise.....	15-120
15.7.2.3	Potential for Residual Effects .....	15-121
15.7.2.4	Bull Trout: Potential Residual Effects due to Noise.....	15-121
15.7.2.5	Dolly Varden: Potential Residual Effects due to Noise.....	15-121
15.7.2.6	Rainbow Trout/Steelhead: Potential Residual Effects due to Noise.....	15-121
15.7.2.7	Pacific Salmon: Potential Residual Effects due to Noise.....	15-123
15.7.3	Erosion and Sedimentation.....	15-123
15.7.3.1	Effect of Erosion and Sedimentation .....	15-123
15.7.3.2	Mitigation for Erosion and Sedimentation.....	15-124
15.7.3.3	Potential for Residual Effects .....	15-125
15.7.3.4	Bull Trout: Potential Residual Effects due to Erosion and Sedimentation .....	15-125
15.7.3.5	Dolly Varden: Potential Residual Effects due to Erosion and Sedimentation.....	15-128
15.7.3.6	Rainbow Trout/Steelhead: Potential Residual Effects due to Erosion and Sedimentation.....	15-128
15.7.3.7	Pacific Salmon: Potential Residual Effects due to Erosion and Sedimentation.....	15-128
15.7.3.8	Aquatic Habitat: Potential Residual Effects due to Erosion and Sedimentation.....	15-129
15.7.4	Water Quality Degradation.....	15-129
15.7.4.1	Effects of Water Quality Degradation .....	15-129
15.7.4.2	Mitigation for Water Quality Degradation.....	15-137
15.7.4.3	Potential for Residual Effects .....	15-143
15.7.4.4	Bull Trout: Potential Residual Effects due to Water Quality Degradation.....	15-169

## Table of Contents

	15.7.4.5 Dolly Varden: Potential Residual Effects due to Water Quality Degradation.....	15-174
	15.7.4.6 Rainbow Trout/Steelhead: Potential Residual Effects due to Water Quality Degradation.....	15-175
	15.7.4.7 Pacific Salmon: Potential Residual Effects due to Water Quality Degradation.....	15-176
	15.7.4.8 Aquatic Habitat: Potential Residual Effects due to Water Quality Degradation.....	15-176
15.7.5	Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	15-177
	15.7.5.1 Effect of Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	15-177
	15.7.5.2 Mitigation for Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	15-228
	15.7.5.3 Potential for Residual Effects.....	15-234
	15.7.5.4 Aquatic Habitat: Potential Residual Effects due to Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	15-234
15.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Fish and Aquatic Habitat.....	15-237
	15.8.1 Residual Effect Descriptors for Fish and Aquatic Habitat.....	15-237
	15.8.2 Residual Effects Assessment for Fish Valued Components (Bull Trout, Dolly Varden, Rainbow Trout/Steelhead, and Pacific Salmon).....	15-238
	15.8.2.1 Direct Mortality.....	15-238
	15.8.2.2 Noise.....	15-257
	15.8.2.3 Erosion and Sedimentation.....	15-257
	15.8.2.4 Water Quality Degradation.....	15-258
	15.8.2.5 Overall Effect on Fish Valued Components (Bull Trout, Dolly Varden, Rainbow Trout/Steelhead, and Pacific Salmon).....	15-267
	15.8.3 Residual Effects Assessment for Aquatic Habitat.....	15-268
	15.8.3.1 Erosion and Sedimentation.....	15-268
	15.8.3.2 Water Quality Degradation.....	15-276
	15.8.4 Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	15-284
	15.8.4.1 Fish Habitat.....	15-284
	15.8.4.2 Non-fish-bearing Aquatic Habitat.....	15-291
	15.8.4.3 Overall Effect on Aquatic Habitat.....	15-292
15.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Fish and Aquatic Habitat.....	15-293
	15.9.1 Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	15-293
	15.9.1.1 Spatial Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions....	15-293
	15.9.1.2 Temporal Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	15-296
	15.9.2 Cumulative Effects Assessment for Fish Valued Components (Bull Trout, Dolly Varden, Rainbow Trout/Steelhead, and Pacific Salmon)....	15-296
	15.9.2.1 Project-specific Residual Effects on Fish Valued Components that are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	15-298
	15.9.2.2 Cumulative Effect of Direct Mortality.....	15-298
	15.9.2.3 Cumulative Effect of Noise.....	15-299
	15.9.2.4 Cumulative Effect of Erosion and Sedimentation.....	15-300
	15.9.2.5 Cumulative Effect of Water Quality Degradation.....	15-315
	15.9.2.6 Overall Cumulative Effect on Fish Valued Components.....	15-319
	15.9.3 Cumulative Effects Assessment for Aquatic Habitat Valued Component	15-320

## Table of Contents

	15.9.3.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Aquatic Habitat Valued Component that are not likely to Result in Cumulative Effects .....	15-320
	15.9.3.2	Cumulative Effects of Erosion and Sedimentation .....	15-320
	15.9.3.3	Cumulative Effect of Water Quality Degradation .....	15-321
	15.9.3.4	Cumulative Effect of Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	15-330
	15.9.3.5	Overall Cumulative Effect on Aquatic Habitat Valued Component.....	15-331
15.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Fish and Aquatic Habitat.....		15-332
15.11	Fish and Aquatic Habitat Conclusions.....		15-332
	References.....		15-353
<b>16</b>	<b>Wetlands .....</b>		<b>16-1</b>
16.1	Wetland Setting.....		16-1
	16.1.1	Methodology Overview.....	16-1
	16.1.1.1	Local Baseline Study Area.....	16-2
	16.1.1.2	Wetland Ecosystem Survey .....	16-2
	16.1.1.3	Wetland Classification and Mapping Wetland Extent.....	16-4
	16.1.1.4	Wetland Function.....	16-5
	16.1.2	Results Overview.....	16-6
	16.1.2.1	Wetland Classification .....	16-6
	16.1.2.2	Wetland Extent.....	16-9
	16.1.2.3	Wetland Function.....	16-12
16.2	Historical Activities.....		16-34
16.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....		16-34
16.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....		16-36
	16.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	16-36
	16.4.2	Temporal Boundaries .....	16-38
16.5	Valued Components.....		16-38
	16.5.1	Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	16-39
	16.5.2	Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	16-40
16.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Wetlands.....		16-40
	16.6.1	Construction .....	16-41
	16.6.2	Operation.....	16-42
	16.6.3	Closure.....	16-43
	16.6.4	Post-closure .....	16-43
16.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Wetlands.....		16-43
	16.7.1	Loss of Wetland Extent and Wetland Function.....	16-43
	16.7.1.1	Mitigation for Loss of Extent and Function.....	16-46
	16.7.1.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	16-49
	16.7.1.3	Potential Residual Effects due to Loss of Wetland Extent and Function .....	16-49
	16.7.2	Alteration or Degradation to Wetland Function .....	16-55
	16.7.2.1	Mitigation for Wetland Function Alteration or Degradation..	16-56
	16.7.2.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	16-61
	16.7.2.3	Potential Residual Effects due to Alteration or Degradation of Wetland Function .....	16-61
16.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Wetlands .....		16-61

## Table of Contents

	16.8.1 Residual Effect Descriptors for Wetlands .....	16-62
	16.8.2 Residual Effects Assessment for Wetland Extent and Function.....	16-62
	16.8.2.1 Loss of Wetland Extent.....	16-62
	16.8.2.2 Loss of Wetland Function.....	16-66
	16.8.2.3 Overall Effect on Wetland Extent and Function.....	16-69
16.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Wetlands.....	16-69
	16.9.1 Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	16-69
	16.9.1.1 Spatial Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions....	16-69
	16.9.1.2 Temporal Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions.....	16-71
	16.9.2 Cumulative Effects Assessment for Wetland Extent and Function.....	16-73
	16.9.2.1 Cumulative Effect of Loss of Wetland Extent.....	16-73
	16.9.2.2 Cumulative Effect of Loss of Wetland Function.....	16-74
	16.9.2.3 Overall Cumulative Effect on Wetland Extent and Function.....	16-74
16.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Wetlands .....	16-77
16.11	Wetland Conclusions.....	16-77
	References.....	16-81
17	Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17-1
	17.1 Terrestrial Ecosystems Setting.....	17-1
	17.1.1 Study Areas .....	17-1
	17.1.2 Ecosystem Mapping .....	17-3
	17.1.3 Regional Ecology .....	17-3
	17.1.3.1 Listed Ecosystems.....	17-7
	17.1.3.2 Sensitive Ecosystems.....	17-8
	17.1.3.3 Rare Plants .....	17-8
	17.1.4 Legislation and Best Management Practices .....	17-10
	17.1.4.1 <i>Mines Act</i> .....	17-11
	17.1.4.2 <i>Forest and Range Practices Act</i> .....	17-11
	17.1.4.3 <i>Species at Risk Act</i> .....	17-11
	17.1.4.4 BC Conservation Data Centre.....	17-11
	17.1.4.5 Canadian Biodiversity Strategy .....	17-11
	17.1.4.6 <i>BC Weed Control Act</i> .....	17-12
	17.1.4.7 North West Invasive Plant Council.....	17-12
	17.1.4.8 <i>BC Wildlife Act</i> .....	17-12
	17.1.4.9 <i>Environmental Management Act</i> .....	17-12
	17.1.4.10 <i>Federal Fisheries Act</i> .....	17-12
	17.1.4.11 <i>Fish Protection Act</i> .....	17-12
	17.1.5 Protected Areas.....	17-13
	17.1.6 Old Growth Management Areas.....	17-13
17.2	Historical Activities .....	17-16
17.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	17-16
	17.3.1 Land Management Structure .....	17-16
17.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	17-20
	17.4.1 Spatial Boundaries.....	17-20
	17.4.2 Temporal Boundaries .....	17-20
17.5	Valued Components.....	17-21
	17.5.1 Valued Components Included in the Assessment.....	17-22

## Table of Contents

	17.5.2	Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	17-26
17.6		Scoping of Potential Effects for Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17-27
	17.6.1	Construction .....	17-31
	17.6.2	Operation.....	17-31
	17.6.3	Closure.....	17-31
	17.6.4	Post-closure .....	17-32
17.7		Potential for Residual Effects for Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17-32
	17.7.1	Vegetation Loss.....	17-33
	17.7.1.1	Mitigation for Vegetation Loss.....	17-35
	17.7.1.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	17-36
	17.7.1.3	Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat: Residual Effects due to Vegetation Loss .....	17-36
	17.7.1.4	Avalanche Track Ecosystems: Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Loss .....	17-55
	17.7.1.5	Listed Ecosystems: Identification of Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Loss .....	17-56
	17.7.1.6	Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems (Non-listed): Identification of Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Loss .....	17-65
	17.7.1.7	Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems: Identification of Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Loss .....	17-71
	17.7.1.8	Old Forest Ecosystems: Identification of Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Loss .....	17-72
	17.7.1.9	Other Terrestrial Ecosystems: Identification of Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Loss .....	17-82
	17.7.2	Vegetation Degradation.....	17-87
	17.7.2.2	Mitigation for Vegetation Degradation.....	17-91
	17.7.2.3	Potential for Residual Effects .....	17-92
	17.7.2.4	Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat: Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Degradation .....	17-92
	17.7.2.5	Avalanche Track Ecosystems: Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Degradation .....	17-93
	17.7.2.6	Listed Ecosystems: Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Degradation .....	17-94
	17.7.2.7	Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems: Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Degradation.....	17-95
	17.7.2.8	Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems: Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Degradation.....	17-97
	17.7.2.9	Old Forest Ecosystems: Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Degradation .....	17-98
	17.7.2.10	Other Terrestrial Ecosystems: Potential Residual Effects due to Vegetation Degradation .....	17-99
17.8		Significance of Residual Effects for Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	17-101
	17.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors for Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	17-101
	17.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat.....	17-103
	17.8.2.1	Vegetation Loss .....	17-103
	17.8.2.2	Vegetation Degradation .....	17-104
	17.8.2.3	Overall Effect on Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat .....	17-104
	17.8.3	Residual Effects Assessment for Avalanche Track Ecosystems .....	17-107

## Table of Contents

	17.8.3.1	Vegetation Loss .....	17-107
	17.8.3.2	Vegetation Degradation .....	17-107
	17.8.3.3	Overall Effect on Avalanche Track Ecosystems.....	17-108
17.8.4		Residual Effects Assessment for Listed Ecosystems.....	17-108
	17.8.4.1	Vegetation Loss .....	17-108
	17.8.4.2	Vegetation Degradation .....	17-111
	17.8.4.3	Overall Effect on Listed Ecosystems .....	17-111
17.8.5		Residual Effects Assessment for Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems...	17-111
	17.8.5.1	Vegetation Loss .....	17-112
	17.8.5.2	Vegetation Degradation .....	17-112
	17.8.5.3	Overall Effect on Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems .....	17-115
17.8.6		Residual Effects Assessment for Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems.....	17-115
	17.8.6.1	Vegetation Loss .....	17-115
	17.8.6.2	Vegetation Degradation .....	17-116
	17.8.6.3	Overall Effect on Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems .....	17-116
17.8.7		Residual Effects Assessment for Old Forest Ecosystems.....	17-116
	17.8.7.1	Vegetation Loss .....	17-121
	17.8.7.2	Vegetation Degradation .....	17-121
	17.8.7.3	Overall Effect on Old Forest Ecosystems .....	17-122
17.8.8		Residual Effects Assessment for Other Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	17-122
	17.8.8.1	Vegetation Loss .....	17-122
	17.8.8.2	Vegetation Degradation .....	17-125
	17.8.8.3	Overall Effect on Other Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17-125
17.9		Potential Cumulative Effects for Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17-125
	17.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	17-128
	17.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions...	17-128
	17.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	17-128
	17.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat ...	17-131
	17.9.2.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	17-131
	17.9.2.2	Cumulative Effect of Vegetation Loss.....	17-131
	17.9.2.3	Cumulative effect of Vegetation Degradation .....	17-135
	17.9.2.4	Overall Cumulative Effect on Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat.....	17-139
	17.9.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Avalanche Track Ecosystems.....	17-139
	17.9.3.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Avalanche Track Ecosystems Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects .....	17-139
	17.9.3.2	Cumulative Effect of Vegetation Loss.....	17-139
	17.9.3.3	Cumulative Effects of Vegetation Degradation .....	17-142
	17.9.3.4	Overall Cumulative Effects on Avalanche Track Ecosystems.....	17-145
	17.9.4	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Listed Ecosystems.....	17-146
	17.9.4.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Listed Ecosystems Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	17-146
	17.9.4.2	Cumulative Effect of Vegetation Loss.....	17-146
	17.9.4.3	Cumulative Effects of Vegetation Degradation .....	17-150
	17.9.4.4	Overall Cumulative Effects on Listed Ecosystems .....	17-154



## Table of Contents

17.9.5	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems .....	17-154
17.9.5.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects .....	17-154
17.9.5.2	Cumulative Effect of Vegetation Loss .....	17-154
17.9.5.3	Cumulative Effects of Vegetation Degradation .....	17-158
17.9.5.4	Overall Cumulative Effect on Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems .....	17-163
17.9.6	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems ....	17-163
17.9.6.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects .....	17-163
17.9.6.2	Cumulative Effect of Vegetation Loss .....	17-163
17.9.6.3	Cumulative Effects of Vegetation Degradation .....	17-166
17.9.6.4	Overall Cumulative Effects on Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems .....	17-169
17.9.7	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Old Forest Ecosystems .....	17-169
17.9.7.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Old Forest Ecosystems Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects .....	17-170
17.9.7.2	Cumulative Effects of Vegetation Loss .....	17-170
17.9.7.3	Cumulative Effects of Vegetation Degradation .....	17-173
17.9.7.4	Overall Cumulative Effects on Old Forest Ecosystems .....	17-175
17.9.8	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Other Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17-175
17.9.8.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Other Terrestrial Ecosystems Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects .....	17-175
17.9.8.2	Cumulative Effects of Vegetation Loss .....	17-175
17.9.8.3	Cumulative Effects of Vegetation Degradation .....	17-180
17.9.8.4	Overall Cumulative Effect on Other Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17-186
17.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17-186
17.11	Terrestrial Ecosystems Conclusions .....	17-186
	References .....	17-192
<b>18</b>	<b>Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat .....</b>	<b>18-1</b>
18.1	Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Setting .....	18-1
18.1.1	Regional Ecology .....	18-2
18.1.2	Protected Areas .....	18-3
18.1.3	Wildlife Legislation .....	18-3
18.1.4	Overview of Baseline Study Methods .....	18-5
18.1.5	Mammal Characterization .....	18-6
18.1.5.1	Ungulates .....	18-6
18.1.5.2	Bears .....	18-12
18.1.5.3	Furbearers .....	18-14
18.1.5.4	Small Mammals .....	18-19
18.1.5.5	Groundhogs .....	18-21
18.1.5.6	Bats .....	18-23
18.1.6	Bird Characterization .....	18-23
18.1.6.1	Raptors .....	18-24
18.1.6.2	Wetland Birds .....	18-24

## Table of Contents

	18.1.6.3	Forest and Alpine Birds .....	18-27
18.1.7		Amphibian (Western Toad) Characterization.....	18-28
18.1.8		Species at Risk.....	18-37
18.1.9		Species or Groups of Local Interest .....	18-37
18.1.10		Important Wildlife Habitat .....	18-37
	18.1.10.1	Sensitive Habitats.....	18-37
	18.1.10.2	High-quality Habitats and Features.....	18-41
18.2		Historical Activities.....	18-42
	18.2.1	Past Industrial Projects .....	18-43
	18.2.2	Timber Harvesting (Forestry).....	18-43
	18.2.3	Guide Outfitting (Hunting).....	18-43
	18.2.4	Wildlife Harvesting .....	18-43
	18.2.5	Aboriginal Harvest .....	18-44
	18.2.5.1	Nisga'a Nation .....	18-44
	18.2.5.2	Tahltan Nation .....	18-44
	18.2.5.3	Gitanyow.....	18-44
	18.2.5.4	Skii km Lax Ha .....	18-44
	18.2.6	Resident Trapping .....	18-45
	18.2.7	Backcountry Recreation .....	18-45
18.3		Land Use Planning Objectives.....	18-45
18.4		Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	18-49
	18.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	18-49
	18.4.2	Temporal Boundaries .....	18-51
18.5		Valued Components.....	18-51
	18.5.1	Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	18-53
	18.5.2	Valued Components Excluded from Assessment or Reflected by Other Species Assessments .....	18-59
18.6		Scoping of Potential Effects for Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat.....	18-59
	18.6.1	Construction .....	18-59
	18.6.2	Operation.....	18-61
	18.6.3	Closure.....	18-73
	18.6.4	Post-closure .....	18-74
18.7		Potential for Residual Effects for Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat.....	18-74
	18.7.1	Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	18-75
	18.7.1.1	Mitigation for Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	18-76
	18.7.1.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	18-77
	18.7.1.3	Ungulates (Moose and Mountain Goats): Potential Residual Effects due to Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	18-77
	18.7.1.4	Bears: Potential Residual Effects due to Habitat Loss and Alteration .....	18-95
	18.7.1.5	American Marten: Potential Residual Effects due to Habitat Loss and Alteration .....	18-107
	18.7.1.6	Hoary Marmot: Potential Residual Effects due to Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	18-108
	18.7.1.7	Bats: Potential Residual Effects due to Habitat Loss and Alteration .....	18-113
	18.7.1.8	Birds: Potential Residual Effects due to Habitat Loss and Alteration .....	18-114

## Table of Contents

	18.7.1.9	Western Toad: Potential Residual Effects due to Habitat Loss and Alteration .....	18-139
18.7.2		Disruption of Movement .....	18-140
	18.7.2.1	Mitigation for Disruption of Movement .....	18-146
	18.7.2.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	18-147
	18.7.2.3	Ungulates (Moose and Mountain Goats): Potential Residual Effects due to Disruption of Movement.....	18-147
	18.7.2.4	Bears: Potential Residual Effects due to Disruption of Movement .....	18-151
	18.7.2.5	American Marten: Potential Residual Effects due to Disruption of Movement.....	18-152
	18.7.2.6	Western Toad: Potential Residual Effects due to Disruption of Movement.....	18-153
18.7.3		Sensory Disturbance .....	18-153
	18.7.3.1	Mitigation for Sensory Disturbance .....	18-155
	18.7.3.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	18-156
	18.7.3.3	Ungulates (Moose and Mountain Goats): Potential Residual Effects due to Sensory Disturbance .....	18-162
	18.7.3.4	Bears: Potential Residual Effects due to Sensory Disturbance .....	18-174
	18.7.3.5	Bats: Potential Residual Effects due to Sensory Disturbance .....	18-178
	18.7.3.6	Birds: Potential Residual Effects due to Sensory Disturbance .....	18-187
18.7.4		Direct Mortality .....	18-205
	18.7.4.1	Mitigation for Direct Mortality .....	18-207
	18.7.4.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	18-208
	18.7.4.3	Ungulates (Moose and Mountain Goats): Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality .....	18-208
	18.7.4.4	Bears: Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality ....	18-213
	18.7.4.5	American Marten: Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality .....	18-214
	18.7.4.6	Hoary Marmot: Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality .....	18-215
	18.7.4.7	Bats: Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality .....	18-216
	18.7.4.8	Birds: Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality ....	18-217
	18.7.4.9	Western Toad: Potential Residual Effects due to Direct Mortality .....	18-218
18.7.5		Indirect Mortality.....	18-219
	18.7.5.1	Mitigation for Indirect Mortality.....	18-219
	18.7.5.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	18-220
	18.7.5.3	Ungulates (Moose and Mountain Goats): Potential Residual Effects due to Indirect Mortality.....	18-220
	18.7.5.4	Bears: Potential Residual Effects due to Indirect Mortality..	18-223
18.7.6		Attractants.....	18-224
	18.7.6.1	Mitigation for Attractants.....	18-225
	18.7.6.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	18-226
	18.7.6.3	Ungulates Moose and Mountain Goats): Potential Residual Effects due to Attractants.....	18-226

## Table of Contents

	18.7.6.4	Bears: Potential Residual Effects due to Attractants.....	18-228
	18.7.6.5	American Marten: Potential Residual Effects due to Attractants.....	18-230
	18.7.6.6	Bats: Potential Residual Effects due to Attractants.....	18-230
	18.7.6.7	Birds: Potential Residual Effects due to Attractants.....	18-230
	18.7.6.8	Western Toads: Potential Residual Effects due to Attractants.....	18-232
18.7.7		Chemical Hazards.....	18-232
	18.7.7.1	Mitigation for Chemical Hazards.....	18-243
	18.7.7.2	Potential for Residual Effects.....	18-245
	18.7.7.3	Ungulates: Potential Residual Effects due to Chemical Hazards.....	18-245
	18.7.7.4	Bears: Potential Residual Effects due to Chemical Hazards.....	18-251
	18.7.7.5	American Martens: Potential Residual Effects due to Chemical Hazards.....	18-252
	18.7.7.6	Hoary Marmots: Potential Residual Effects due to Chemical Hazards.....	18-255
	18.7.7.7	Bats: Potential Residual Effects due to Chemical Hazards.....	18-256
	18.7.7.8	Birds: Potential Residual Effects due to Chemical Hazards.....	18-256
	18.7.7.9	Western Toads: Potential Residual Effects due to Chemical Hazards.....	18-260
18.8		Significance of Residual Effects for Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat.....	18-261
	18.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors for Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat.....	18-261
	18.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Moose.....	18-262
	18.8.2.1	Residual Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	18-262
	18.8.2.2	Residual Disruption of Movement.....	18-262
	18.8.2.3	Residual Direct Mortality.....	18-266
	18.8.2.4	Residual Indirect Mortality.....	18-266
	18.8.2.5	Residual Chemical Hazards.....	18-267
	18.8.2.6	Overall Effect on Moose.....	18-267
	18.8.3	Residual Effects Assessment for Mountain Goats.....	18-268
	18.8.3.1	Residual Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	18-268
	18.8.3.2	Residual Disturbance to Movement.....	18-268
	18.8.3.3	Residual Sensory Disturbance.....	18-270
	18.8.3.4	Residual Direct Mortality.....	18-270
	18.8.3.5	Residual Indirect Mortality.....	18-270
	18.8.3.6	Residual Chemical Hazards.....	18-271
	18.8.3.7	Overall Effect on Mountain Goats.....	18-271
	18.8.4	Residual Effects Assessment for Grizzly Bears and Black Bears.....	18-272
	18.8.4.1	Residual Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	18-272
	18.8.4.2	Residual Disruption of Movement.....	18-275
	18.8.4.3	Residual Direct Mortality.....	18-275
	18.8.4.4	Residual Indirect Mortality.....	18-276
	18.8.4.5	Residual Attractants.....	18-276
	18.8.4.6	Overall Effect on Bears.....	18-277
	18.8.5	Residual Effects Assessment for American Marten.....	18-277
	18.8.5.1	Residual Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	18-277
	18.8.5.2	Residual Direct Mortality.....	18-279
	18.8.5.3	Overall Effect on American Marten.....	18-279

## Table of Contents

18.8.6	Residual Effects Assessment for Hoary Marmot.....	18-279
18.8.6.1	Residual Habitat Loss and Alteration .....	18-281
18.8.6.2	Residual Direct Mortality.....	18-281
18.8.6.3	Overall Effect on Hoary Marmots .....	18-281
18.8.7	Residual Effects Assessment for Bats .....	18-281
18.8.7.1	Residual Chemical Hazards .....	18-283
18.8.8	Residual Effects Assessment for Birds.....	18-283
18.8.8.1	Residual Habitat Loss and Alteration .....	18-283
18.8.8.2	Residual Chemical Hazards .....	18-287
18.8.8.3	Overall Effect on Wetland Birds.....	18-288
18.8.9	Residual Effects Assessment for Western Toads .....	18-288
18.8.9.1	Residual Direct Mortality.....	18-288
18.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat.....	18-288
18.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	18-291
18.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions ...	18-291
18.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with Other Projects and Human Activities.....	18-302
18.9.1.3	Cumulative Effects Analyses for Wildlife .....	18-332
18.9.1.4	Identification of Mitigation Measures for Cumulative Effects.....	18-338
18.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Moose.....	18-338
18.9.2.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Moose that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	18-339
18.9.2.2	Cumulative Effect of Habitat Loss and Alteration on Moose .....	18-339
18.9.2.3	Cumulative Effect of Disruption of Movement on Moose ...	18-343
18.9.2.4	Cumulative Effect of Direct Mortality on Moose .....	18-348
18.9.2.5	Cumulative Effect of Indirect Mortality on Moose.....	18-350
18.9.2.6	Overall Cumulative Effect on Moose .....	18-350
18.9.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Mountain Goats.....	18-351
18.9.3.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Mountain Goats that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	18-352
18.9.3.2	Cumulative Effect of Habitat Loss and Alteration on Mountain Goat.....	18-352
18.9.3.3	Cumulative Effect of Disruption of Movement on Mountain Goats.....	18-359
18.9.3.4	Cumulative Effect of Sensory Disturbance on Mountain Goat.....	18-360
18.9.3.5	Cumulative Effect of Direct Mortality on Mountain Goat....	18-361
18.9.3.6	Cumulative Effect of Indirect Mortality on Mountain Goat .	18-362
18.9.3.7	Overall Cumulative Effect on Mountain Goat.....	18-363
18.9.4	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Grizzly Bears.....	18-363
18.9.4.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Grizzly Bears that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	18-364
18.9.4.2	Cumulative Effect of Habitat Loss and Alteration on Grizzly Bears .....	18-364
18.9.4.3	Cumulative Effect of Disruption of Movement on Grizzly Bears .....	18-368
18.9.4.4	Cumulative Effect of Direct Mortality on Grizzly Bears .....	18-372

## Table of Contents

	18.9.4.5	Cumulative Effect of Indirect Mortality on Grizzly Bears ...	18-374
	18.9.4.6	Cumulative Effect of Attractants on Grizzly Bears .....	18-375
	18.9.4.7	Overall Cumulative Effect on Grizzly Bears .....	18-376
18.9.5	Cumulative	Effects Assessment for Black Bears .....	18-376
	18.9.5.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Black Bears that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	18-376
	18.9.5.2	Cumulative Effect of Habitat Loss and Alteration on Black Bears .....	18-378
	18.9.5.3	Cumulative Effect of Disruption of Movement on Black Bears .....	18-381
	18.9.5.4	Cumulative Effect of Direct Mortality on Black Bears .....	18-381
	18.9.5.5	Cumulative Effect of Indirect Mortality on Black Bears .....	18-382
	18.9.5.6	Cumulative Effect of Attractants on Black Bears .....	18-383
	18.9.5.7	Overall Cumulative Effect on Black Bears.....	18-384
18.9.6	Cumulative	Effects Assessment for American Marten .....	18-384
	18.9.6.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on American Marten that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	18-384
	18.9.6.2	Cumulative Effect of Habitat Loss and Alteration on American Marten .....	18-386
	18.9.6.3	Cumulative Effect of Direct Mortality on American Marten.....	18-387
	18.9.6.4	Overall Cumulative Effect on American Marten .....	18-391
18.9.7	Cumulative	Effects Assessment for Hoary Marmots .....	18-391
	18.9.7.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Hoary Marmot that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	18-391
	18.9.7.2	Cumulative Effect of Habitat Loss and Alteration on Hoary Marmot.....	18-393
	18.9.7.3	Cumulative Effect of Direct Mortality on Hoary Marmot ....	18-394
	18.9.7.4	Overall Cumulative Effect on Hoary Marmots.....	18-397
18.9.8	Cumulative	Effects Assessment for Bats.....	18-398
	18.9.8.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Bats that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	18-398
18.9.9	Cumulative	Effects Assessment for Birds .....	18-398
	18.9.9.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Bird Valued Components that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects .....	18-398
	18.9.9.2	Cumulative Effect of Habitat Loss and Alteration on Raptors, Wetland Birds, and Forest and Alpine Birds.....	18-398
	18.9.9.3	Cumulative Effect of Chemical Hazards on Wetland Birds .	18-404
	18.9.9.4	Overall Cumulative Effect on Wetland Birds .....	18-411
18.9.10	Cumulative	Effects Assessment for Western Toads.....	18-411
	18.9.10.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Western Toad that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	18-411
	18.9.10.2	Cumulative Effect of Direct Mortality on Western Toads....	18-411
18.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat .....		18-413
18.11	Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Conclusions.....		18-413
	References.....		18-426

## Table of Contents

19	Noise.....	19-1
19.1	Noise Setting.....	19-2
19.2	Historical Activities.....	19-2
19.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	19-3
19.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	19-3
19.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	19-3
19.4.2	Temporal Boundaries.....	19-3
19.5	Valued Components.....	19-5
19.5.1	Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	19-5
19.5.2	Valued Components Excluded in Assessment.....	19-5
19.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Noise.....	19-5
19.6.1	Construction.....	19-7
19.6.2	Operation.....	19-8
19.6.3	Closure.....	19-8
19.6.4	Post-closure.....	19-8
19.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Noise.....	19-9
19.7.1	Sleep Disturbance.....	19-10
19.7.1.1	Mitigation for Sleep Disturbance.....	19-12
19.7.1.2	Potential for Residual Effects.....	19-12
19.7.2	Interference with Speech Communication.....	19-12
19.7.2.1	Mitigation for Interference with Speech Communications.....	19-13
19.7.2.2	Potential for Residual Effects.....	19-13
19.7.3	Complaints.....	19-13
19.7.3.1	Potential for Residual Effects.....	19-13
19.7.4	High Annoyance.....	19-13
19.7.4.1	Potential for Residual Effects.....	19-14
19.7.5	Noise-induced Rattling.....	19-14
19.7.5.1	Potential for Residual Effects.....	19-14
19.7.6	Loss of Wildlife Habitat.....	19-14
19.7.6.1	Potential for Residual Effects.....	19-15
19.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Noise.....	19-15
19.8.1	Residual Effects Descriptors for Noise.....	19-16
19.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Noise.....	19-16
19.8.2.1	Residual Effects Assessment for Noise: Noise Modelling Methodology and Standards Used.....	19-16
19.8.2.2	Residual Effect Assessment for Sleep Disturbance.....	19-20
19.8.2.3	Residual Effects Assessment for Interference with Speech Communication.....	19-20
19.8.2.4	Residual Effects Assessment for Complaints.....	19-20
19.8.2.5	Residual Effects Assessment for High Annoyance.....	19-27
19.8.2.6	Residual Effects Assessment for Noise-induced Rattling.....	19-27
19.8.2.7	Residual Effects Assessment for Loss of Wildlife Habitat.....	19-27
19.8.2.8	Overall Effect on Noise.....	19-33
19.9	Potentially Cumulative Effects for Noise.....	19-35
19.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	19-35
19.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions.....	19-35
19.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions.....	19-37
19.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Noise.....	19-38

## Table of Contents

	19.9.2.1	Project-Specific Residual Effects on Noise that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	19–38
	19.9.2.2	Cumulative Effect of Loss of Wildlife Habitat.....	19–40
	19.9.2.3	Cumulative Effect of Sleep Disturbance.....	19–40
	19.9.2.4	Overall Cumulative Effect on Noise.....	19–45
19.10		Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Noise.....	19–45
19.11		Noise Conclusions.....	19–46
		References.....	19–48
<b>20</b>		<b>Economics.....</b>	<b>20–1</b>
	20.1	Economic Setting.....	20–1
	20.1.1	Study Areas.....	20–1
	20.1.2	Data Collection and Information Sources.....	20–4
	20.1.2.1	Data Limitations.....	20–5
	20.1.2.2	Quantitative.....	20–5
	20.1.2.3	Qualitative.....	20–6
	20.1.3	The Provincial Economy.....	20–6
	20.1.3.1	Overview.....	20–6
	20.1.3.2	Economic Sectors in British Columbia.....	20–7
	20.1.3.3	Goods Sector.....	20–7
	20.1.3.4	Mining.....	20–8
	20.1.4	Regional Study Area.....	20–9
	20.1.4.1	Overview.....	20–9
	20.1.4.2	Population.....	20–10
	20.1.4.3	Aboriginal Population.....	20–10
	20.1.4.4	Employment and Income.....	20–12
	20.1.4.5	Economic Sectors and Activity.....	20–13
	20.1.5	Local Study Area.....	20–15
	20.1.5.1	Nisga’a Nation.....	20–15
	20.1.5.2	Tahltan Nation.....	20–18
	20.1.5.3	The Hazeltons.....	20–23
	20.1.5.4	Gitanyow First Nation.....	20–26
	20.1.5.5	Stewart.....	20–31
	20.1.5.6	Smithers.....	20–34
	20.1.5.7	Terrace.....	20–36
	20.2	Historical Activities.....	20–39
	20.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	20–40
	20.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	20–42
	20.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	20–42
	20.4.2	Temporal Boundaries.....	20–42
	20.5	Valued Components.....	20–43
	20.5.1	Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	20–43
	20.5.2	Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	20–44
	20.6	Scoping of Potential Economics Effects.....	20–45
	20.6.1	Construction.....	20–45
	20.6.2	Operation.....	20–52
	20.6.3	Closure.....	20–54
	20.6.4	Post-closure.....	20–54
	20.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Economics.....	20–54



## Table of Contents

20.7.1	Economic Impact Modelling .....	20–55
20.7.1.1	Modelling Approach .....	20–55
20.7.1.2	Economic Impact Model Results .....	20–56
20.7.2	Change in Employment .....	20–57
20.7.2.1	Mitigation for Change in Employment .....	20–59
20.7.2.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	20–62
20.7.2.3	Employment and Income: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Employment .....	20–62
20.7.3	Change in Income and Value-added .....	20–64
20.7.3.1	Mitigation for Change in Income and Value-added .....	20–66
20.7.3.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	20–66
20.7.3.3	Employment and Income: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Income and Value-added .....	20–66
20.7.3.4	Business Opportunities and Economic Development: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Income and Value-added .....	20–68
20.7.4	Change in Business Activity .....	20–68
20.7.4.1	Mitigation for Change in Business Activity .....	20–69
20.7.4.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	20–69
20.7.4.3	Employment and Income: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Business Activity .....	20–69
20.7.4.4	Business Opportunities and Economic Development: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Business Activity .....	20–69
20.7.5	Change in the Economy .....	20–71
20.7.5.1	Mitigation for Change in the Economy .....	20–72
20.7.5.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	20–72
20.7.5.3	Business Opportunities and Economic Development: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in the Economy .....	20–72
20.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Economics .....	20–74
20.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors for Economics .....	20–74
20.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Employment and Income .....	20–74
20.8.2.1	Change in Employment .....	20–74
20.8.2.2	Change in Income and Value-added .....	20–79
20.8.3	Residual Effects Assessment for Business Opportunities and Economic Development .....	20–80
20.8.3.1	Change in Business Activity .....	20–80
20.8.3.2	Change in the Economy .....	20–80
20.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Economics .....	20–83
20.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects .....	20–83
20.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions .....	20–83
20.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with Other Projects and Human Actions .....	20–85
20.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Employment and Income .....	20–87
20.9.2.1	Cumulative Effect for Change in Employment .....	20–87
20.9.2.2	Cumulative Effect for Change in Income and Value-added .....	20–89
20.9.2.3	Overall Cumulative Effect on Employment and Income .....	20–90
20.9.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Business Opportunities and Economic Development .....	20–90

## Table of Contents

	20.9.3.1 Cumulative Effect for Change in Business Activity .....	20-90
	20.9.3.2 Cumulative Effect for Change in the Economy .....	20-94
	20.9.3.3 Overall Cumulative Effect on Business Opportunities and Economic Development.....	20-97
20.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Economics.....	20-97
20.11	Economic Conclusions .....	20-97
	References.....	20-101
<b>21</b>	<b>Heritage.....</b>	<b>21-1</b>
21.1	Heritage Setting .....	21-1
	21.1.1 Legislative Framework.....	21-1
21.2	Approach.....	21-1
	21.2.1 Paleoenvironment.....	21-3
	21.2.2 Biogeoclimatic Zones.....	21-4
	21.2.3 Ethnographic Background.....	21-5
	21.2.3.1 Gitxsan.....	21-5
	21.2.3.2 Skikm Lax Ha.....	21-5
	21.2.3.3 Nisga'a.....	21-5
	21.2.3.4 Tahltan.....	21-6
	21.2.3.5 Tset'saut.....	21-6
	21.2.4 Historic Background and Built Heritage.....	21-7
	21.2.4.1 Early European Contact.....	21-7
	21.2.4.2 History of Mineral Exploration in the Regional Study Area....	21-7
	21.2.5 Previous Archaeological Studies.....	21-8
	21.2.6 Assessment of Archaeological Site Potential.....	21-9
	21.2.7 Field Survey.....	21-10
	21.2.8 AIA Results.....	21-13
21.3	Historical Activities.....	21-14
21.4	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	21-15
21.5	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	21-15
	21.5.1 Spatial Boundaries.....	21-15
	21.5.2 Temporal Boundaries.....	21-15
21.6	Valued Components.....	21-16
	21.6.1 Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	21-16
	21.6.2 Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	21-16
21.7	Scoping of Potential Effects for Heritage.....	21-17
	21.7.1 Construction.....	21-17
	21.7.1.1 HcTo-1.....	21-20
	21.7.1.2 HdTk-4.....	21-20
	21.7.1.3 HdTn-1.....	21-22
	21.7.1.4 HdTn-2.....	21-22
	21.7.1.5 HdTo-7.....	21-24
	21.7.2 Operation.....	21-24
	21.7.2.1 HdTI-1.....	21-25
	21.7.2.2 HdTo-6.....	21-25
	21.7.3 Closure.....	21-27
	21.7.4 Post-closure.....	21-27
21.8	Potential for Residual Effects for Heritage.....	21-27
	21.8.1 Disturbance of Archaeological Sites.....	21-27

## Table of Contents

	21.8.1.1 Mitigation for Disturbance of Known Archaeological Sites...	21–27
	21.8.1.2 Mitigation for the Disturbance of Unknown Archaeological Sites .....	21–28
	21.8.1.3 Potential for Residual Effects .....	21–28
	21.8.1.4 Residual Effects due to Disturbance of Archaeological Sites.....	21–28
21.9	Significance of Residual Effects for Heritage.....	21–31
	21.9.1 Residual Effect Descriptors for Heritage.....	21–31
	21.9.1.1 Disturbance of Known Archaeological Sites .....	21–31
	21.9.1.2 Disturbance of Unknown Archaeological Sites .....	21–31
	21.9.1.3 Overall Effect on Archaeological Sites.....	21–32
21.10	Potential Cumulative Effects for Heritage .....	21–32
	21.10.1 Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	21–32
	21.10.1.1 Spatial Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions .....	21–32
	21.10.1.2 Project-specific Residual Effects on Archaeological Sites that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	21–36
21.11	Heritage Conclusions.....	21–37
	References.....	21–38
<b>22</b>	<b>Social .....</b>	<b>22–1</b>
	22.1 Social Setting.....	22–1
	22.1.1 Baseline Methodology Overview .....	22–1
	22.1.1.1 Study Areas.....	22–1
	22.1.1.2 Methods.....	22–3
	22.1.2 Results Overview.....	22–6
	22.1.2.1 Regional Study Area.....	22–6
	22.1.2.2 Local Study Area – Aboriginal Communities.....	22–9
	22.1.2.3 Local Study Area – Municipalities .....	22–17
22.2	Historical Activities.....	22–22
22.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	22–23
22.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	22–27
	22.4.1 Spatial Boundaries.....	22–27
	22.4.2 Temporal Boundaries .....	22–27
22.5	Valued Components.....	22–27
	22.5.1 Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	22–28
	22.5.2 Valued Components Excluded from Further Assessment .....	22–29
22.6	Scoping of Potential Effects.....	22–30
	22.6.1 Construction .....	22–38
	22.6.2 Operation .....	22–38
	22.6.3 Closure.....	22–39
	22.6.4 Post-closure .....	22–40
22.7	Potential for Residual Effects .....	22–40
	22.7.1 Change in Employment .....	22–40
	22.7.1.1 Mitigation and Enhancement for Change in Employment.....	22–42
	22.7.1.2 Potential for Residual Effects: Change in Employment .....	22–42
	22.7.1.3 Education, Skills, and Training: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Employment.....	22–42
	22.7.1.4 Community Well-being: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Employment .....	22–44

## Table of Contents

22.7.2	Change in Income.....	22-44
22.7.2.1	Mitigation and Enhancement for Change in Income .....	22-45
22.7.2.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	22-46
22.7.2.3	Community Well-being: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Income .....	22-46
22.7.3	Change in Population.....	22-48
22.7.3.1	Mitigation and Enhancement for Change in Population .....	22-49
22.7.3.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	22-50
22.7.3.3	Community Demographics, Infrastructure, and Services: Identification of Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Population.....	22-53
22.7.3.4	Education, Skills Development, and Training: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Population.....	22-53
22.7.3.5	Community Well-being: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Population.....	22-54
22.7.4	Change in Tax Base.....	22-55
22.7.4.1	Mitigation for Change in Tax Base.....	22-56
22.7.4.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	22-56
22.7.4.3	Community Demographics, Infrastructure, and Services: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Tax Base.....	22-56
22.7.5	Change in Traffic.....	22-56
22.7.5.1	Mitigation for Change in Traffic.....	22-58
22.7.5.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	22-58
22.7.5.3	Community Well-being: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Traffic .....	22-60
22.8	Significance of Residual Effects.....	22-60
22.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors.....	22-60
22.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Community Demographics, Infrastructure, and Services.....	22-60
22.8.2.1	Residual Effect of Change in Population on Community Demographics .....	22-60
22.8.2.2	Residual Effect of Change in Population on Community Infrastructure and Services .....	22-65
22.8.2.3	Residual Effect of Change in Tax Base on Community Infrastructure and Services .....	22-65
22.8.2.4	Overall Residual Effect on Community Demographics, Infrastructure, and Services .....	22-66
22.8.3	Residual Effects Assessment for Education, Skills Development, and Training .....	22-66
22.8.3.1	Residual Effect of Change in Employment on Education, Skills Development, and Training .....	22-66
22.8.3.2	Residual Effect of Change in Population on Education, Skills Development, and Training .....	22-69
22.8.3.3	Overall Effect on Education, Skills Development, and Training.....	22-69
22.8.4	Residual Effects Assessment for Community Well-being .....	22-69
22.8.4.1	Residual Effect of Change in Employment on Community Well-being .....	22-70

## Table of Contents

		22.8.4.2 Residual Effects of Change in Income on Community Well-being .....	22-70
		22.8.4.3 Residual Effects of Change in Population on Community Well-being .....	22-73
		22.8.4.4 Residual Effects of Traffic on Community Well-being .....	22-73
		22.8.4.5 Overall Effect on Community Well-being .....	22-74
22.9	Potential	Cumulative Effects .....	22-74
	22.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects .....	22-74
		22.9.1.1 Spatial Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions .....	22-74
		22.9.1.2 Temporal Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions .....	22-77
	22.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Community Demographics, Infrastructure and Services .....	22-78
		22.9.2.1 Cumulative Effect for Change in Demographics .....	22-79
		22.9.2.2 Cumulative Effect for Change in Demand on Community Infrastructure and Services .....	22-80
		22.9.2.3 Cumulative Effect for Change in Funding for Community Infrastructure and Services .....	22-81
		22.9.2.4 Overall Cumulative Effect on Community Demographics, Infrastructure, and Services .....	22-81
	22.9.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Education, Skills, and Training .....	22-81
		22.9.3.1 Cumulative Effect for Change in Educational Profile .....	22-82
		22.9.3.2 Cumulative Effect for Change in Educational Facilities .....	22-85
		22.9.3.3 Overall Cumulative Effect on Education, Skills, and Training .....	22-86
	22.9.4	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Community Well-being .....	22-86
		22.9.4.1 Cumulative Effect for Change in Employment and Population (Community Pride) .....	22-90
		22.9.4.2 Cumulative Effect for Change in Employment (Family Stress and Substance Misuse) .....	22-90
		22.9.4.3 Cumulative Effect for Change in Income (Financial Independence and Access to Goods and Services) .....	22-91
		22.9.4.4 Cumulative Effect for Change in Income (Substance Misuse) .....	22-92
		22.9.4.5 Cumulative Effect for Change in Population (Social and Mental Health) .....	22-92
		22.9.4.6 Cumulative Effect for Change in Traffic (Emissions) .....	22-93
		22.9.4.7 Cumulative Effect for Change in Traffic (Traffic Safety) .....	22-94
		22.9.4.8 Overall Cumulative Effect on Community Well-being .....	22-95
22.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Social Conditions .....		22-95
22.11	Social Conclusions .....		22-95
	References .....		22-101
<b>23</b>	<b>Land Use .....</b>		<b>23-1</b>
	23.1 Land Use Setting .....		23-1
		23.1.1 Study Areas .....	23-1
		23.1.2 Legislative Framework .....	23-3
		23.1.3 Study Methods .....	23-6

## Table of Contents

23.1.4	Description of Existing Land Uses.....	23-7
23.1.4.1	Land and Resource Management Plans .....	23-9
23.1.4.2	Provincial Parks and Ecological Reserves .....	23-11
23.1.4.3	Nisga'a Nation and First Nations.....	23-12
23.1.4.4	Hunting and Guide Outfitting .....	23-19
23.1.4.5	Trapping.....	23-21
23.1.4.6	Commercial and Public Recreation.....	23-23
23.1.4.7	Forestry .....	23-25
23.1.4.8	Mining and Mineral Exploration.....	23-25
23.1.4.9	Water Licences.....	23-30
23.1.4.10	Transportation and Utilities .....	23-30
23.1.4.11	Navigable Waters.....	23-32
23.2	Historical Activities .....	23-33
23.2.1	Mining and Forestry .....	23-33
23.2.2	Hunting, Trapping, and Fishing.....	23-35
23.2.3	Recreation.....	23-35
23.3	Land and Resource Management Plans .....	23-35
23.3.1	Cassiar-Iskut Stikine Land and Resource Management Plan .....	23-35
23.3.1.1	Management Strategies.....	23-36
23.3.2	Nass South SRMP .....	23-39
23.3.2.1	Management Strategies.....	23-39
23.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	23-41
23.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	23-41
23.4.2	Temporal Boundaries .....	23-41
23.5	Valued Components.....	23-41
23.5.1	Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	23-43
23.5.2	Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	23-43
23.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Land Use.....	23-43
23.6.1	Construction .....	23-56
23.6.2	Operations.....	23-56
23.6.3	Closure.....	23-57
23.6.4	Post-closure .....	23-58
23.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Land Use .....	23-58
23.7.1	Restrictions on Access to Land and Resources .....	23-59
23.7.1.1	Mitigation for Restrictions on Access.....	23-59
23.7.1.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	23-59
23.7.1.3	Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting, and Trapping: Potential Residual Effects due to Public Access Restrictions .....	23-59
23.7.1.4	Recreational Hunting and Fishing: Potential Residual Effects due to Public Access Restrictions.....	23-63
23.7.1.5	Subsistence: Potential Residual Effects due to Public Access Restrictions .....	23-64
23.7.1.6	Traditional/Heritage Value of Land: Potential Residual Effects due to Access Restrictions.....	23-65
23.7.1.7	Mining and Mineral Exploration: Potential Residual Effects due to Public Access Restrictions.....	23-65
23.7.1.8	Navigable Waters: Potential Residual Effects due to Restrictions on Access .....	23-66

## Table of Contents

23.7.2	Change in Sensory Disturbances .....	23-66
23.7.2.1	Mitigation for Sensory Disturbances .....	23-70
23.7.2.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	23-71
23.7.2.3	Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting, and Trapping: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Sensory Disturbances.....	23-71
23.7.2.4	Recreational Hunting and Fishing: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Sensory Disturbances .....	23-73
23.7.2.5	Subsistence: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Sensory Disturbances.....	23-74
23.7.2.6	Traditional/Heritage Value of Land: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Sensory Disturbances .....	23-75
23.7.3	Change in the Amount of Resources .....	23-75
23.7.3.1	Mitigation for Change in the Amount of Resources .....	23-77
23.7.3.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	23-80
23.7.3.3	Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting and Trapping: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in the Amount of Resources .....	23-80
23.7.3.4	Recreational Hunting and Fishing: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in the Amount of Resources .....	23-85
23.7.3.5	Subsistence: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in the Amount of Resources.....	23-86
23.7.3.6	Traditional/Heritage Value of Land: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in the Amount of Resources .....	23-87
23.7.3.7	Water Licences: Potential Residual Effects due to Change in Quantity of Resources.....	23-88
23.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Land Use.....	23-88
23.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors for Land Use.....	23-88
23.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting and Trapping.....	23-91
23.8.2.1	Restriction on Access to Land and Resources .....	23-91
23.8.2.2	Change in Sensory Disturbances.....	23-91
23.8.2.3	Change in the Amount of Resources.....	23-92
23.8.3	Residual Effects Assessment for Recreational Hunting and Fishing .....	23-92
23.8.3.1	Change in the Amount of Resources.....	23-92
23.8.4	Residual Effects Assessment for Subsistence.....	23-95
23.8.4.1	Restricted Access to Land and Resources.....	23-95
23.8.4.2	Change in the Amount of Resources.....	23-95
23.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Land Use .....	23-96
23.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	23-96
23.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	23-96
23.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	23-100
23.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting and Trapping.....	23-102
23.9.2.1	Cumulative Effect of Restrictions on Access to Land and Resources .....	23-102
23.9.2.2	Cumulative Effect of Sensory Disturbances .....	23-107
23.9.2.3	Cumulative Effect of Change in the Amount of Resources..	23-111

## Table of Contents

23.9.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Recreational Hunting and Fishing...	23–112
23.9.3.1	Cumulative Effect of Change in the Amount of Resources..	23–112
23.9.4	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Subsistence.....	23–113
23.9.4.1	Cumulative Effect of Restrictions on Access to Land and Resources .....	23–113
23.9.4.2	Cumulative Effect of Change in the Amount of Resources..	23–114
23.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Land Use .....	23–117
23.11	Land Use Conclusions .....	23–117
	References.....	23–122
<b>24</b>	<b>Visual and Aesthetic Resources .....</b>	<b>24–1</b>
24.1	Project Setting.....	24–1
24.1.1	Legislation and Policy Guidance.....	24–1
24.1.2	Baseline Studies.....	24–2
24.1.2.1	Local Study Area .....	24–2
24.1.2.2	Data Sources and Methods.....	24–2
24.1.3	Resource Characterization.....	24–5
24.1.4	Unuk River .....	24–5
24.1.5	Teigen Lake and Teigen Creek.....	24–8
24.1.6	Mitchell Creek Valley and Sulphurets Creek Valley .....	24–10
24.1.7	Treaty Creek Valley.....	24–10
24.2	Historical Activities .....	24–13
24.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	24–13
24.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	24–14
24.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	24–14
24.4.2	Temporal Boundaries .....	24–14
24.5	Valued Component Selection .....	24–14
24.5.1	Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	24–17
24.5.2	Valued Components Excluded from Further Assessment.....	24–18
24.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Visual and Aesthetic Resources .....	24–18
24.6.1	Construction .....	24–18
24.6.2	Operation.....	24–22
24.6.3	Closure.....	24–22
24.6.4	Post-closure .....	24–23
24.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Visual and Aesthetic Resources .....	24–23
24.7.1	Visual and Aesthetic Resources Assessment Methodology .....	24–24
24.7.2	Alteration of Visual Quality for River Rafting Tours .....	24–27
24.7.2.1	Mitigation for Alteration of Visual Quality for River Rafting Tours .....	24–29
24.7.2.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	24–29
24.7.3	Alteration of Visual Quality for Heli-skiing Tours .....	24–30
24.7.3.1	Mitigation for Alteration of Visual Quality for Heli-skiing Tours .....	24–34
24.7.3.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	24–35
24.7.4	Alteration of Visual Quality for Guided Backcountry Expeditions .....	24–39
24.7.4.1	Mitigation for Alteration of Visual Quality for Guided Backcountry Expeditions .....	24–39
24.7.4.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	24–39
24.7.5	Alteration of Visual Quality for Guided Angling Trips .....	24–42



## Table of Contents

	24.7.5.1	Mitigation for Alteration of Visual Quality for Guided Angling Trips.....	24-44
	24.7.5.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	24-44
24.7.6		Alteration of Visual Quality for Visitors to the Treaty Creek Site.....	24-46
	24.7.6.1	Mitigation for Alteration of Visual Quality for Visitors to the Treaty Creek Site .....	24-46
	24.7.6.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	24-46
24.7.7		Alteration of Visual Quality for users of Highway 37 .....	24-48
	24.7.7.1	Mitigation for Alteration of Visual Quality for Highway 37 Users .....	24-50
	24.7.7.2	Potential for Residual Effects .....	24-50
24.8		Significance of Residual Effects for Visual and Aesthetic Resources.....	24-50
	24.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors for Visual and Aesthetic Resources.....	24-50
	24.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Visual Quality for River Rafting Tours.....	24-55
	24.8.3	Residual Effects Assessment for Visual Quality for Heli-skiing Tours.....	24-55
	24.8.4	Residual Effects Assessment for Visual Quality for Guided Backcountry Expeditions.....	24-57
	24.8.5	Residual Effects Assessment for Visual Quality for Guided Angling Trips .....	24-57
	24.8.6	Residual Effects Assessment for Visual Quality for Users of Highway 37 .....	24-61
24.9		Potential Cumulative Effects for Visual and Aesthetic Resources .....	24-61
	24.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	24-61
	24.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	24-61
	24.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions .....	24-63
	24.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for River Rafting Tours.....	24-63
	24.9.2.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on River Rafting Tours that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	24-63
	24.9.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Heli-skiing Tours .....	24-63
	24.9.3.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Heli-skiing Tours that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	24-66
	24.9.3.2	Cumulative Effect of Altering the Visual Quality for Heli-skiing Tours .....	24-66
	24.9.3.3	Project-specific Cumulative Effects Mitigations for Altering the Visual Quality for Heli-skiing Tours .....	24-66
	24.9.3.4	Overall Cumulative Effect on Heli-skiing Tours .....	24-66
	24.9.4	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Guided Backcountry Expeditions.....	24-66
	24.9.4.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Guided Backcountry Expeditions that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects .....	24-66
	24.9.4.2	Cumulative Effect of Altering the Visual Quality for Guided Backcountry Expeditions .....	24-71
	24.9.4.3	Overall Cumulative Effect on Guided Backcountry Expeditions .....	24-71
	24.9.5	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Guided Angling Trips .....	24-71
	24.9.5.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Guided Angling Trips that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	24-71

## Table of Contents

	24.9.5.2 Cumulative Effect of Altering the Visual Quality for Guided Angling Trips .....	24-71
	24.9.6 Cumulative Effects Assessment for Users of Highway 37 .....	24-72
	24.9.6.1 Project-specific Residual Effects on Users of Highway 37 that Are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	24-72
24.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Visual and Aesthetic Resources .....	24-72
24.11	Visual and Aesthetic Resources Conclusions .....	24-72
	References.....	24-77
<b>25</b>	<b>Human Health .....</b>	<b>25-1</b>
25.1	Human Health Setting.....	25-2
	25.1.1 Regulatory Setting.....	25-2
	25.1.2 Land Use.....	25-3
	25.1.3 Drinking and Recreational Water .....	25-4
	25.1.4 Air Quality.....	25-5
	25.1.5 Country Foods .....	25-6
	25.1.6 Noise.....	25-9
25.2	Historical Activities .....	25-10
25.3	Land Use Planning Objectives.....	25-12
25.4	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	25-13
	25.4.1 Spatial Boundaries.....	25-13
	25.4.1.1 Drinking and Recreational Water .....	25-13
	25.4.1.2 Air Quality .....	25-13
	25.4.1.3 Country Foods.....	25-14
	25.4.1.4 Noise .....	25-14
	25.4.2 Temporal Boundaries .....	25-14
25.5	Valued Components.....	25-15
	25.5.1 Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	25-15
	25.5.2 Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	25-16
25.6	Scoping of Potential Effects for Human Health.....	25-16
	25.6.1 Construction .....	25-19
	25.6.2 Operation.....	25-20
	25.6.3 Closure.....	25-21
	25.6.4 Post-closure .....	25-21
25.7	Potential for Residual Effects for Human Health .....	25-22
	25.7.1 Changes in Health due to Drinking and Recreational Water Quality.....	25-22
	25.7.1.1 Mitigation for Changes in Drinking and Recreational Water Quality.....	25-24
	25.7.1.2 Potential for Residual Effects .....	25-25
	25.7.2 Changes in Health due to Air Quality .....	25-31
	25.7.2.1 Mitigation for Changes in Air Quality .....	25-36
	25.7.2.2 Potential for Residual Effects .....	25-36
	25.7.3 Changes in Health due to Country Foods Quality.....	25-53
	25.7.3.1 Mitigation for Changes in Country Foods Quality .....	25-63
	25.7.3.2 Potential for Residual Effects .....	25-64
	25.7.4 Changes in Health due to Noise .....	25-77
	25.7.4.1 Mitigation for Changes in Noise Levels .....	25-84
	25.7.4.2 Potential for Residual Effects .....	25-85

## Table of Contents

25.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Human Health.....	25–85
25.8.1	Residual Effect Descriptors for Human Health.....	25–85
25.8.2	Residual Effects Assessment for Human Health.....	25–86
25.8.2.1	Changes in Health due to Drinking and Recreational Water Quality.....	25–86
25.8.2.2	Changes in Health due to Air Quality.....	25–95
25.8.2.3	Changes in Health due to Country Foods Quality.....	25–96
25.8.2.4	Changes in Health due to Noise.....	25–97
25.8.2.5	Overall Effects on Human Health.....	25–98
25.9	Potential Cumulative Effects for Human Health.....	25–98
25.9.1	Scoping of Cumulative Effects.....	25–98
25.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	25–99
25.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions.....	25–102
25.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Human Health.....	25–103
25.9.2.1	Project-specific Residual Effects on Human Health that are Not Likely to Result in Cumulative Effects.....	25–103
25.9.2.2	Cumulative Effect on Drinking Water.....	25–104
25.9.2.3	Cumulative Effect of Air Quality.....	25–107
25.9.2.4	Cumulative Effect of Country Foods.....	25–111
25.9.2.5	Cumulative Effect of Noise.....	25–113
25.9.2.6	Overall Cumulative Effect on Human Health.....	25–114
25.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Human Health.....	25–114
25.11	Human Health Conclusions.....	25–114
	References.....	25–117
<b>26</b>	<b>Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans.....</b>	<b>26–1</b>
26.1	Introduction.....	26–1
26.1.1	Environmental Management System.....	26–1
26.1.2	Construction Management Plan.....	26–2
26.1.3	Corporate Policies Supporting the Environmental Management System.....	26–4
26.1.3.1	Environmental Policy.....	26–4
26.1.3.2	Health and Safety Policy.....	26–4
26.1.4	Environmental Management Plans.....	26–5
26.1.5	KSM Project Reporting Structure.....	26–6
26.1.5.1	Purpose.....	26–6
26.1.5.2	Responsibilities.....	26–6
26.1.5.3	Stop Work Authority.....	26–10
26.2	Construction Management Plan.....	26–11
26.2.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26–11
26.2.2	Objectives.....	26–12
26.2.3	Construction Management Plan.....	26–13
26.2.4	Activity-specific and Site-specific Plans.....	26–13
26.2.5	Environmental Compliance.....	26–14
26.2.6	Valued Component Environmental Management Plans.....	26–14
26.2.6.1	Rock Storage Facility Management and Monitoring Plan.....	26–14
26.2.6.2	Tailing Management Facility Management and Monitoring Plan.....	26–14
26.2.6.3	Water Storage Facility Management and Monitoring Plan.....	26–14

## Table of Contents

	26.2.6.4	Domestic and Industrial Waste Management Plan .....	26-15
	26.2.6.5	Dangerous Goods and Hazardous Materials Management Plan .....	26-15
	26.2.6.6	Explosives Management Plan .....	26-15
	26.2.6.7	Emergency Response Plan .....	26-15
	26.2.6.8	Spill Prevention and Emergency Response Plan .....	26-15
	26.2.6.9	Air Quality Management Plan .....	26-15
	26.2.6.10	Greenhouse Gas Management Plan .....	26-15
	26.2.6.11	Terrain, Surficial Geology and Soil Management and Monitoring Plan .....	26-16
	26.2.6.12	Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage Management Plan .....	26-16
	26.2.6.13	Groundwater Management Plan.....	26-16
	26.2.6.14	Glacier Monitoring Plan.....	26-16
	26.2.6.15	Water Management Plan.....	26-16
	26.2.6.16	Fish and Aquatic Habitat Management Plan.....	26-16
	26.2.6.17	Wetlands Management Plan.....	26-17
	26.2.6.18	Terrestrial Ecosystems Management and Monitoring Plans...	26-17
	26.2.6.19	Wildlife Management Plan .....	26-17
	26.2.6.20	Noise Management Plan .....	26-18
	26.2.6.21	Heritage Management and Monitoring Plan.....	26-18
	26.2.6.22	Visual Quality Management Plan .....	26-18
	26.2.6.23	Traffic and Access Management Plan.....	26-18
	26.2.7	Construction Schedule.....	26-18
	26.2.8	Targets, Monitoring, and Reporting .....	26-19
26.3		Rock Storage Facilities Management and Monitoring Plan .....	26-20
	26.3.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-20
	26.3.2	Legislation and Standards.....	26-23
	26.3.3	Rock Storage Stability Plan.....	26-24
	26.3.3.1	Objective .....	26-24
	26.3.3.2	Targets.....	26-24
	26.3.3.3	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-24
	26.3.3.4	Monitoring .....	26-31
	26.3.3.5	Reporting.....	26-32
26.4		Tailing Management Facility Management and Monitoring Plan .....	26-32
	26.4.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-34
	26.4.2	Dam Stability Plan.....	26-37
	26.4.2.1	Objective .....	26-37
	26.4.2.2	Targets.....	26-38
	26.4.2.3	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-38
	26.4.2.4	Monitoring .....	26-44
	26.4.2.5	Reporting.....	26-46
26.5		Water Storage Facility Management and Monitoring Plan .....	26-47
	26.5.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-48
	26.5.2	Dam Stability Plan.....	26-51
	26.5.2.1	Objective .....	26-51
	26.5.2.2	Targets.....	26-51
	26.5.2.3	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-51
	26.5.2.4	Monitoring .....	26-55

## Table of Contents

	26.5.2.5	Reporting.....	26-57
26.6		Domestic and Industrial Waste Management Plan .....	26-58
	26.6.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-58
	26.6.2	Objective.....	26-58
	26.6.3	Targets .....	26-59
	26.6.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-59
	26.6.5	Waste Reduction.....	26-59
	26.6.6	Material Reuse.....	26-59
	26.6.7	Recycling.....	26-60
	26.6.8	Recovery.....	26-60
	26.6.9	Tracking and Enforcement .....	26-60
	26.6.10	Tracking.....	26-61
	26.6.11	Audit Program .....	26-61
	26.6.12	Waste Types and Sources.....	26-61
	26.6.13	Waste Types Generated during Construction .....	26-61
	26.6.14	Waste Collection/Disposal Facilities.....	26-63
		26.6.14.1 Construction.....	26-63
		26.6.14.2 Waste Disposal Methods/Facilities for the Construction Camps .....	26-63
		26.6.14.3 Operation.....	26-64
		26.6.14.4 Waste Collection Areas.....	26-64
		26.6.14.5 Landfills .....	26-65
		26.6.14.6 Incinerators .....	26-65
		26.6.14.7 Sewage Plant Effluent/Sludge.....	26-66
		26.6.14.8 Procedures for Managing Specific Waste .....	26-66
		26.6.14.9 Hazardous Waste .....	26-67
		26.6.14.10 Non-hazardous Waste .....	26-71
		26.6.14.11 Closure and Decommissioning .....	26-74
		26.6.14.12 Waste Management during Closure .....	26-74
		26.6.14.13 Decommissioning of the Waste Management Facilities .....	26-74
	26.6.15	Monitoring.....	26-74
	26.6.16	Reporting.....	26-75
	26.6.17	Responsible Person.....	26-75
26.7		Dangerous Goods and Hazardous Materials Management Plan .....	26-75
	26.7.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-75
	26.7.2	Objectives .....	26-76
	26.7.3	Targets .....	26-76
	26.7.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-76
		26.7.4.1 Transport of Goods and Materials .....	26-76
		26.7.4.2 Monitoring .....	26-85
	26.7.5	Responsible Person.....	26-85
26.8		Explosives Management Plan .....	26-85
	26.8.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-85
	26.8.2	Objectives .....	26-86
	26.8.3	Targets .....	26-86
	26.8.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-87
	26.8.5	Monitoring.....	26-91
	26.8.6	Reporting.....	26-91
	26.8.7	Responsible Person.....	26-91

## Table of Contents

26.9	Emergency Response Plan.....	26-92
26.9.1	Introduction .....	26-92
26.9.1.1	Legislation and Standards .....	26-92
26.9.1.2	Objectives .....	26-93
26.9.1.3	Targets.....	26-93
26.9.1.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-94
26.9.1.5	Monitoring .....	26-105
26.9.1.6	Reporting.....	26-105
26.9.1.7	Response Organization .....	26-105
26.10	Spill Prevention and Emergency Response Plan .....	26-107
26.10.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-107
26.10.2	Objective.....	26-108
26.10.3	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-109
26.10.3.1	Spill Prevention.....	26-109
26.10.3.2	Risk Analysis and Management.....	26-109
26.10.3.3	Materials-specific Actions .....	26-111
26.11	Air Quality Management Plan .....	26-120
26.11.1	Emissions Management Plan.....	26-120
26.11.1.1	Legislation and Standards .....	26-121
26.11.1.2	Objective .....	26-122
26.11.1.3	Targets.....	26-122
26.11.1.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-122
26.11.1.5	Monitoring .....	26-125
26.11.1.6	Reporting.....	26-125
26.11.1.7	Adaption.....	26-125
26.11.1.8	Responsible Person .....	26-126
26.11.2	Fugitive Dust Emissions Management Plan .....	26-126
26.11.2.1	Legislation and Standards .....	26-126
26.11.2.2	Objective .....	26-126
26.11.2.3	Targets.....	26-126
26.11.2.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-127
26.11.2.5	Monitoring .....	26-129
26.11.2.6	Reporting.....	26-130
26.11.2.7	Adaption.....	26-130
26.11.2.8	Responsible Person .....	26-130
26.11.3	Meteorology Monitoring Plan .....	26-130
26.11.3.1	Objectives .....	26-130
26.11.3.2	Monitoring .....	26-133
26.11.3.3	Reporting.....	26-133
26.11.3.4	Responsible Person .....	26-133
26.12	Greenhouse Gas Management Plan .....	26-133
26.12.1	Legislation and Best Practices Context .....	26-138
26.12.1.1	Greenhouse Gas Emission Reporting and Reduction Requirements .....	26-140
26.12.1.2	Objective .....	26-141
26.12.1.3	Targets.....	26-142
26.12.1.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Minimize Effects .....	26-142
26.12.1.5	Monitoring and Reporting.....	26-149
26.12.1.6	Responsible Person .....	26-149

## Table of Contents

26.13	Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soil Management and Monitoring Plans.....	26-149
26.13.1	Soil Salvage and Handling Plan .....	26-151
26.13.1.1	Objective .....	26-151
26.13.1.2	Targets.....	26-151
26.13.1.3	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-151
26.13.1.4	Monitoring .....	26-153
26.13.1.5	Reporting.....	26-154
26.13.1.6	Responsible Person .....	26-154
26.13.2	Erosion Control Plan .....	26-154
26.13.2.1	Objective .....	26-154
26.13.2.2	Targets.....	26-154
26.13.2.3	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-155
26.13.2.4	Monitoring .....	26-157
26.13.2.5	Reporting.....	26-159
26.13.2.6	Responsible Person .....	26-159
26.13.3	Soil Contamination Prevention Plan.....	26-159
26.13.3.1	Objective .....	26-159
26.13.3.2	Targets.....	26-159
26.13.3.3	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-159
26.13.3.4	Monitoring .....	26-160
26.13.3.5	Reporting.....	26-161
26.13.3.6	Responsible Person .....	26-161
26.14	Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage Management Plan.....	26-161
26.14.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-162
26.14.2	Objectives .....	26-162
26.14.3	Targets .....	26-162
26.14.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-163
26.14.4.1	Mine Site Deposit Rock .....	26-163
26.14.4.2	Non-deposit Rock and Overburden.....	26-167
26.14.4.3	Tailing.....	26-169
26.14.5	Reporting .....	26-172
26.14.6	Responsible Persons .....	26-172
26.15	Groundwater Monitoring Plan .....	26-173
26.15.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-173
26.15.2	Objective.....	26-173
26.15.3	Targets .....	26-173
26.15.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-174
26.15.4.1	Monitoring .....	26-177
26.15.5	Adaptive Management.....	26-184
26.15.6	Reporting .....	26-184
26.16	Glacier Monitoring Plan .....	26-185
26.16.1	Objective.....	26-185
26.16.2	Targets .....	26-185
26.16.3	Monitoring.....	26-185
26.16.4	Responsible Persons .....	26-189
26.16.5	Reporting.....	26-190
26.17	Water Management Plan.....	26-190
26.17.1	Water Management Philosophy.....	26-190
26.17.2	Objectives and Targets .....	26-193

## Table of Contents

	26.17.2.1	Objectives .....	26–193
	26.17.2.2	Targets.....	26–193
26.17.3		Legislation and Standards.....	26–193
	26.17.3.1	British Columbia <i>Mines Act</i> .....	26–194
	26.17.3.2	Health, Safety and Reclamation Code for Mines in British Columbia.....	26–194
	26.17.3.3	<i>Fisheries Act</i> .....	26–194
	26.17.3.4	<i>Canadian Environmental Protection Act</i> .....	26–194
26.17.4		Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26–194
	26.17.4.1	Construction.....	26–195
	26.17.4.2	Operation.....	26–197
	26.17.4.3	Closure and Post-closure.....	26–197
26.17.5		Mine Site .....	26–198
	26.17.5.1	Changes to Flow Pathways and Drainage Areas.....	26–198
	26.17.5.2	Water Balance.....	26–198
	26.17.5.3	Mine Site and Associated Infrastructure: Avoidance, Control, and Mitigation.....	26–198
26.17.6		Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	26–216
	26.17.6.1	Changes to Flow Pathways and Drainage Areas.....	26–217
	26.17.6.2	Water Balance.....	26–217
	26.17.6.3	Processing and Tailing Management Area: Avoidance, Control, and Mitigation.....	26–217
26.17.7		Monitoring.....	26–235
	26.17.7.1	Water Quality Monitoring.....	26–236
	26.17.7.2	Waste Rock Performance Monitoring.....	26–237
	26.17.7.3	Tailing Performance Monitoring .....	26–237
	26.17.7.4	Post-closure Monitoring.....	26–237
	26.17.7.5	Surface Water Quantity Monitoring .....	26–237
26.17.8		Responsible Persons .....	26–238
26.17.9		Reporting.....	26–238
26.18		Fish and Aquatic Habitat Management Plan.....	26–238
	26.18.1	Fish and Aquatic Habitat Effects Protection and Mitigation Plan.....	26–238
	26.18.1.1	Legislation and Standards .....	26–239
	26.18.1.2	Objectives .....	26–240
	26.18.1.3	Targets.....	26–242
	26.18.1.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26–242
	26.18.1.5	Access Roads: Avoidance, Control, and Mitigation .....	26–246
	26.18.1.6	Transmission Line: Avoidance, Control, and Mitigation.....	26–249
	26.18.1.7	McTagg Power Plant: Avoidance, Control, and Mitigation ..	26–250
	26.18.1.8	Camps and Associated Infrastructure: Avoidance, Control, and Mitigation.....	26–250
	26.18.1.9	Mine Site and Associated Infrastructure: Avoidance, Control, and Mitigation.....	26–252
	26.18.1.10	Tailing Management Facility and Water Storage Facility: Avoidance, Control, and Mitigation .....	26–253
	26.18.1.11	Mitchell-Treaty Twinned Tunnels: Avoidance, Control, and Mitigation.....	26–255
	26.18.1.12	Monitoring Goals .....	26–256
	26.18.1.13	Reporting.....	26–257



## Table of Contents

	26.18.1.14 Responsibilities .....	26-257
26.18.2	Aquatic Effects Monitoring Plan .....	26-257
	26.18.2.1 Objectives of the Aquatic Effects Monitoring Plan .....	26-258
	26.18.2.2 Metal Mining Effluent Regulations Monitoring Requirements .....	26-258
	26.18.2.3 Reporting Requirements .....	26-264
	26.18.2.4 Provincial Monitoring Requirements .....	26-265
	26.18.2.5 Monitoring Requirements under the <i>Canadian Environmental Assessment Act</i> and Information Requirements for Risk Assessment .....	26-265
26.18.3	Fish Salvage Plan .....	26-276
	26.18.3.1 Objectives .....	26-277
	26.18.3.2 Project Management .....	26-277
	26.18.3.3 Field Methods .....	26-278
	26.18.3.4 Reporting .....	26-280
	26.18.3.5 Schedule .....	26-280
	26.18.3.6 Reporting and Responsible Persons .....	26-280
26.19	Wetlands Management Plan .....	26-281
	26.19.1 Wetlands Management Plan Rationale .....	26-281
	26.19.1.1 Legislation and Standards .....	26-281
	26.19.1.2 Objective .....	26-282
	26.19.1.3 Targets .....	26-282
	26.19.1.4 Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-283
	26.19.1.5 Monitoring .....	26-286
	26.19.1.6 Reporting .....	26-289
	26.19.1.7 Responsible Person .....	26-289
26.20	Terrestrial Ecosystems Management and Monitoring Plan .....	26-289
	26.20.1 Vegetation Clearing Management Plan .....	26-290
	26.20.1.1 Legislation and Standards .....	26-290
	26.20.1.2 Targets .....	26-291
	26.20.1.3 Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-291
	26.20.1.4 Monitoring and Reporting .....	26-293
	26.20.2 Invasive Plant Management Plan .....	26-293
	26.20.2.1 Objective .....	26-294
	26.20.2.2 Targets .....	26-294
	26.20.2.3 Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-294
	26.20.2.4 Monitoring and Reporting .....	26-296
	26.20.3 Transmission Line Management Plan .....	26-297
	26.20.3.1 Objective .....	26-297
	26.20.3.2 Targets .....	26-297
	26.20.3.3 Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-297
	26.20.3.4 Monitoring and Reporting .....	26-298
	26.20.4 Terrestrial Plant Tissue Metal Concentrations Monitoring Plan .....	26-299
	26.20.4.1 Objective .....	26-299
	26.20.4.2 Target .....	26-299
	26.20.4.3 Identifying Opportunities for Adaptive Management .....	26-299
	26.20.4.4 Reporting .....	26-300
26.21	Wildlife Management and Monitoring Plan .....	26-300
	26.21.1 Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Management Plan .....	26-301

## Table of Contents

	26.21.1.1	Objectives .....	26-301
	26.21.1.2	Legislation and Standards .....	26-301
	26.21.1.3	Targets.....	26-302
	26.21.1.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-303
	26.21.1.5	Monitoring .....	26-312
26.21.2		Ungulate Winter Range Management Plan .....	26-312
	26.21.2.1	Objective .....	26-312
	26.21.2.2	Legislation and Standards .....	26-312
	26.21.2.3	Targets.....	26-312
	26.21.2.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-312
	26.21.2.5	Reporting.....	26-313
	26.21.2.6	Responsible Person .....	26-313
26.21.3		Wildlife Effects Monitoring Program.....	26-313
	26.21.3.1	Moose Monitoring Program.....	26-314
	26.21.3.2	Mountain Goat Monitoring Program .....	26-316
	26.21.3.3	Grizzly Bear and Black Bear Monitoring Program.....	26-318
	26.21.3.4	Furbearer Monitoring Program .....	26-320
	26.21.3.5	Hoary Marmot Monitoring Program.....	26-321
	26.21.3.6	Bat Monitoring Program .....	26-321
	26.21.3.7	Bird Monitoring Program.....	26-321
	26.21.3.8	Western Toads .....	26-323
	26.21.3.9	Reporting.....	26-324
	26.21.3.10	Responsible Person .....	26-324
26.22		Noise Management Plan .....	26-324
	26.22.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-324
		26.22.1.1 Potential Effects .....	26-324
		26.22.1.2 Noise Impact Criteria .....	26-327
		26.22.1.3 Mitigation Criteria .....	26-327
	26.22.2	Objective.....	26-327
	26.22.3	Targets .....	26-328
	26.22.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-328
		26.22.4.1 Mobile Equipment .....	26-329
		26.22.4.2 Stationary Equipment.....	26-329
		26.22.4.3 Blasting .....	26-329
		26.22.4.4 Indoor Equipment .....	26-329
	26.22.5	Mitigation Plans.....	26-330
	26.22.6	Monitoring.....	26-330
		26.22.6.1 Noise Monitoring Locations .....	26-330
		26.22.6.2 Sampling Techniques.....	26-330
		26.22.6.3 Noise Monitoring Equipment.....	26-331
		26.22.6.4 Placement of Monitoring Equipment.....	26-331
		26.22.6.5 Safe Work Procedures.....	26-331
	26.22.7	Documentation and Record Keeping.....	26-332
		26.22.7.1 Complaints Procedure.....	26-332
		26.22.7.2 Complaints Register.....	26-332
		26.22.7.3 Noise Monitoring Exceedance .....	26-333
	26.22.8	Reporting.....	26-333
		26.22.8.1 Measurement Reports .....	26-334
		26.22.8.2 Evaluation of Measurement Results .....	26-335

## Table of Contents

	26.22.8.3	Measurement Uncertainty .....	26-335
	26.22.8.4	Reporting.....	26-335
	26.22.8.5	Review .....	26-336
26.23		Heritage Management and Monitoring Plan.....	26-336
	26.23.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-336
	26.23.2	Heritage Protection of Known Archaeological Sites.....	26-337
	26.23.2.1	Objective .....	26-337
	26.23.2.2	Targets.....	26-337
	26.23.2.3	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-337
	26.23.2.4	Reporting.....	26-338
	26.23.2.5	Responsible Person .....	26-338
	26.23.3	Heritage Protection of Unknown Archaeological Sites.....	26-338
	26.23.3.1	Objective .....	26-338
	26.23.3.2	Targets.....	26-338
	26.23.3.3	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate.....	26-339
	26.23.3.4	Reporting.....	26-339
	26.23.3.5	Responsible Person .....	26-339
26.24		Visual Quality Management Plan .....	26-339
	26.24.1	Legislation and Standards.....	26-340
	26.24.2	Objective.....	26-340
	26.24.3	Targets .....	26-340
	26.24.4	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate .....	26-340
	26.24.5	Monitoring.....	26-341
	26.24.6	Reporting .....	26-341
	26.24.7	Responsible Person.....	26-341
26.25		Traffic and Access Management Plan .....	26-341
	26.25.1	Coulter Creek Access Road.....	26-341
	26.25.2	Treaty Creek Access Road .....	26-342
	26.25.3	Temporary Frank Mackie Glacier Access Route.....	26-342
	26.25.4	Highway 37 and Highway 37A .....	26-342
	26.25.5	Legislation and Standards.....	26-343
	26.25.6	Objectives .....	26-343
	26.25.7	Targets .....	26-343
	26.25.8	Actions to Avoid, Control, and Mitigate Potential Effects of Project Access Roads.....	26-344
	26.25.8.1	General Design and Maintenance .....	26-344
	26.25.8.2	Design and Maintenance Features to Protect Wildlife.....	26-345
	26.25.8.3	Design and Maintenance Features to Protect Fish and Fish Habitat.....	26-348
	26.25.9	Traffic Management along Project Access Roads.....	26-349
	26.25.9.1	Avoid Wildlife/Vehicle Interactions.....	26-349
	26.25.9.2	Avoid Adverse Effects from Spills .....	26-349
	26.25.9.3	Avoid Increased Wildlife Pressures due to Public Access....	26-349
	26.25.10	Actions to Avoid or Mitigate Potential Effects of Project Traffic on Highways 37 and 37A .....	26-350
	26.25.10.1	Traffic and Access Road Management Plan Risk Mitigation Measures .....	26-350
	26.25.10.2	Wildlife and Terrestrial Ecosystems Specific Risk Mitigation Measures .....	26-352

## Table of Contents

	26.25.10.3 Climate and Air Quality Specific Risk Mitigation Measures .....	26-352
	26.25.11 Monitoring .....	26-352
	26.25.12 Reporting .....	26-353
	26.25.13 Responsible Person .....	26-353
	References .....	26-354
<b>27</b>	<b>Closure and Reclamation .....</b>	<b>27-1</b>
27.1	Introduction .....	27-1
27.2	Regulatory Framework .....	27-2
27.2.1	British Columbia <i>Mines Act</i> (1996a) and Health, Safety and Reclamation Code (BC MEMPR 2008) .....	27-2
27.2.2	<i>Fisheries Act</i> (1985) .....	27-3
27.2.3	<i>Environmental Management Act</i> (2003) .....	27-4
27.2.4	<i>Water Act</i> (1996b) .....	27-4
27.2.5	Riparian Management Area Guidebook (BC MOF and BC MOE 1995) .....	27-4
27.3	Closure and Reclamation Objectives .....	27-4
27.3.1	Provision of Stable Landforms .....	27-5
27.3.2	Re-establishment of Productive Land Use .....	27-6
27.3.2.1	Project Setting .....	27-7
27.3.2.2	Recreational, Guide Outfitting, and Trap Lines .....	27-9
27.3.2.3	End Land Use Objective .....	27-9
27.3.3	Protection of Terrestrial and Aquatic Resources .....	27-9
27.4	Soil Handling Plan .....	27-9
27.4.1	Soil Assessment .....	27-10
27.4.2	Soil Salvage .....	27-13
27.4.2.1	Salvage Sequence and Methods .....	27-16
27.4.2.2	Salvage Equipment .....	27-26
27.4.3	Stockpiling .....	27-26
27.4.3.1	Stockpile Construction .....	27-26
27.4.3.2	Siting .....	27-26
27.4.3.3	Configuration .....	27-27
27.4.3.4	Erosion Control .....	27-27
27.4.4	Materials Balance .....	27-28
27.4.4.1	Rock Storage Facilities .....	27-28
27.4.4.2	Tailing Management Facility .....	27-29
27.5	Closure and Reclamation Planning .....	27-29
27.5.1	Introduction .....	27-29
27.5.2	Mine Site .....	27-30
27.5.2.1	Mitchell Pit and Block Cave Mine .....	27-30
27.5.2.2	Sulphurets Pit .....	27-35
27.5.2.3	Kerr Pit .....	27-40
27.5.2.4	Sulphurets-Mitchell Conveyor Tunnel and Associated Overland Conveyors .....	27-40
27.5.2.5	Iron Cap Block Cave Mine .....	27-41
27.5.2.6	Mitchell and McTagg Rock Storage Facilities .....	27-43
27.5.2.7	Mitchell Ore Preparation Complex .....	27-53
27.5.2.8	Mitchell Diversion Tunnels .....	27-53
27.5.2.9	McTagg Twinned Diversion Tunnels .....	27-55

## Table of Contents

	27.5.2.10	Water Storage Facility and Water Treatment Plant .....	27-55
	27.5.2.11	Mitchell Truck Shop .....	27-55
27.5.3		Mitchell-Treaty Twinned Tunnels .....	27-56
27.5.4		Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	27-56
	27.5.4.1	Treaty Process Plant, Carbon-in-Leach Plant, and Other Structures .....	27-58
	27.5.4.2	Coarse and Fine Ore Stockpiles .....	27-58
	27.5.4.3	Treaty Ore Preparation Complex Batch Plant Stockpile .....	27-59
	27.5.4.4	Temporary Water Treatment 8 - Unlined Muck Pad .....	27-59
	27.5.4.5	Laydown Areas .....	27-59
	27.5.4.6	Landfarm .....	27-60
	27.5.4.7	Structures Required Post-closure .....	27-60
	27.5.4.8	Tailing Management Facility .....	27-60
27.5.5		Access Roads .....	27-77
	27.5.5.1	Treaty Creek Access Road .....	27-77
	27.5.5.2	Coulter Creek Access Road .....	27-77
27.5.6		Quarry and Borrow Sources .....	27-77
	27.5.6.1	Closure .....	27-77
	27.5.6.2	Reclamation .....	27-77
27.5.7		Explosives .....	27-81
	27.5.7.1	Closure .....	27-81
	27.5.7.2	Reclamation .....	27-81
27.5.8		Mini Hydro Plants and Energy Recovery .....	27-83
	27.5.8.1	Water Treatment Plant Energy Recovery .....	27-83
	27.5.8.2	Mitchell Diversion Hydro – Upper Sulphurets Power Plant .....	27-83
	27.5.8.3	McTagg Diversion Hydro – McTagg Power Plant .....	27-83
27.5.9		Muck Pads and Sediment Ponds .....	27-83
	27.5.9.1	Closure .....	27-83
	27.5.9.2	Reclamation .....	27-83
27.5.10		Construction and Operation Camps .....	27-84
	27.5.10.1	Closure .....	27-84
	27.5.10.2	Reclamation .....	27-86
27.6		Post-closure Landscape .....	27-86
	27.6.1	Overview .....	27-86
	27.6.2	Rock Storage Facilities .....	27-86
	27.6.3	Tailing Management Facility .....	27-91
27.7		Closure and Reclamation Schedule .....	27-95
27.8		Reclamation Monitoring .....	27-107
27.9		Research Programs .....	27-107
27.10		Temporary Mine Shutdown and Mine Closure .....	27-108
27.11		Closure Costing .....	27-108
27.12		Post-closure .....	27-109
	27.12.1	Water Treatment Plant .....	27-109
	27.12.2	Selenium Treatment Plant .....	27-110
	27.12.3	Closure and Post-closure Monitoring .....	27-110
	27.12.3.1	Surface Water Quality .....	27-110
	27.12.3.2	Aquatic Resources and Fish .....	27-111
	27.12.3.3	Groundwater Monitoring .....	27-113
	27.12.3.4	Reclamation and Soils Monitoring .....	27-113

## Table of Contents

	27.12.3.5 Geotechnical Stability.....	27-114
	References.....	27-115
<b>28</b>	<b>Reporting.....</b>	<b>28-1</b>
	28.1 Introduction.....	28-1
	28.2 Compliance Reporting Requirements.....	28-1
	28.3 Voluntary Reporting.....	28-1
	28.4 Reporting Responsibility.....	28-2
	28.5 Notification.....	28-6
	References.....	28-7
<b>29</b>	<b>Nisga'a Nation Rights and Interests.....</b>	<b>29-1</b>
	29.1 Introduction.....	29-1
	29.2 Location of the Project in Relation to Nisga'a Lands, Nass Wildlife Area and Nass Area as defined in the Nisga'a Final Agreement.....	29-3
	29.3 Information Sources.....	29-6
	29.4 Nisga'a Treaty Rights and Interests under the Nisga'a Final Agreement.....	29-6
	29.4.1 Harvesting Rights.....	29-7
	29.4.1.1 Fish and Aquatic Plants.....	29-7
	29.4.1.2 Wildlife.....	29-7
	29.4.2 Other Interests.....	29-7
	29.5 Background Information and Setting.....	29-7
	29.5.1 Political Structure.....	29-8
	29.5.2 Social and Cultural Setting.....	29-8
	29.5.2.1 Education.....	29-9
	29.5.2.2 Health and Community Well-being.....	29-10
	29.5.2.3 Community Health Facilities and Services.....	29-11
	29.5.2.4 Emergency and Social Services.....	29-11
	29.5.3 Economic Setting.....	29-12
	29.5.3.1 Employment.....	29-12
	29.5.3.2 Income and Earnings.....	29-13
	29.5.3.3 Nisga'a Nation Businesses.....	29-13
	29.5.3.4 Nisga'a Subsistence Economy and Activities.....	29-14
	29.5.4 Heritage Setting.....	29-14
	29.5.5 Current Use of Lands and Resources for Traditional Purposes.....	29-14
	29.5.5.1 Land Use Planning.....	29-14
	29.5.5.2 Fishing and Fisheries Management.....	29-15
	29.5.5.3 Wildlife Harvesting and Wildlife Management.....	29-15
	29.5.5.4 Culturally Important Plants.....	29-15
	29.6 Nisga'a Consultation Activities and Identified Issues.....	29-16
	29.6.1 Nisga'a Consultation – Pre-Application/Pre-Submission Stage.....	29-16
	29.6.2 Proposed Nisga'a Consultation- Application/EIS Review Stage.....	29-17
	29.7 Summary of Adverse Effects on Relating to Nisga'a Treaty Rights and Interests.....	29-18
	29.7.1 Issues Identified by Nisga'a to Date.....	29-18
	29.7.2 Project Design Changes to Mitigate Effects on Nisga'a Concerns.....	29-20
	29.7.3 Social Effects.....	29-22
	29.7.3.1 Housing and Community Infrastructure.....	29-22
	29.7.3.2 Education, Emergency, Health, and Social Services.....	29-23
	29.7.3.3 Community Well-being.....	29-24

## Table of Contents

29.7.4	Cultural Effects.....	29–26
29.7.4.1	Hunting, Fishing and Plant Harvesting.....	29–27
29.7.4.2	Nisga’a Cultural Events, Diet, and Language.....	29–31
29.7.4.3	Cultural Residual Effects.....	29–32
29.7.5	Economic Effects.....	29–33
29.7.5.1	Employment and Skills/Capacity Training.....	29–34
29.7.5.2	Business Capacity Development and Revenue.....	29–36
29.7.6	Heritage Effects.....	29–38
29.7.6.1	Heritage Sites.....	29–38
29.7.7	Health Effects.....	29–39
29.7.7.1	Country Foods.....	29–39
29.7.7.2	Air Quality.....	29–40
29.7.7.3	Drinking Water Quality.....	29–41
29.7.7.4	Mental Health.....	29–42
29.7.7.5	Nisga’a Worker Safety.....	29–43
29.7.8	Current Use of Lands and Resources for Traditional Purposes.....	29–45
29.7.8.1	Fisheries.....	29–45
29.7.8.2	Hunting.....	29–49
29.7.8.3	Culturally Important Plants.....	29–55
29.7.8.4	Navigable Waters.....	29–56
29.8	Potential for Residual Effects to Impact Nisga’a Treaty Rights and Interests.....	29–57
29.8.1	Social Residual Effects.....	29–57
29.8.1.1	Heritage Residual Effects.....	29–58
29.8.1.2	Economic Residual Effects.....	29–58
29.8.1.3	Health Residual Effects.....	29–59
29.9	Conclusions Related to Potential Impacts on Residents of Nisga’a Lands, Nisga’a Lands and Nisga’a Interests.....	29–59
29.9.1	Summary of Residual Social Effects.....	29–60
29.9.2	Summary of Residual Cultural Effects.....	29–61
29.9.3	Summary of Residual Economic Effects.....	29–62
29.9.4	Summary of Residual Heritage Effects.....	29–62
29.9.5	Summary of Residual Health Effects.....	29–63
29.9.6	Summary of Residual Effects on Current Use of Land and Resources for Traditional Purposes.....	29–63
	References.....	29–67
30	First Nations Rights and Interests.....	30–1
30.1	Introduction.....	30–1
30.2	Location of the Project in Relation to Aboriginal Traditional Territories.....	30–4
30.3	Métis Interests.....	30–7
30.4	Incorporation of Aboriginal Traditional Knowledge.....	30–9
30.5	Background Information on First Nations Settings.....	30–10
30.5.1	Tahltan Nation.....	30–10
30.5.1.1	Social, Cultural and Heritage Setting.....	30–11
30.5.1.2	Economic Setting.....	30–12
30.5.1.3	Health and Community Well-being.....	30–13
30.5.1.4	Current Use of Land and Resources for Traditional Purposes.....	30–13
30.5.2	Gitanyow First Nation.....	30–14

## Table of Contents

	30.5.2.1	Social, Cultural and Heritage Setting.....	30–15
	30.5.2.2	Economic Setting.....	30–16
	30.5.2.3	Health and Community Well-being.....	30–16
	30.5.2.4	Current Use of Land and Resources for Traditional Purposes.....	30–17
30.5.3		Gitxsan Nation.....	30–19
	30.5.3.1	Social, Cultural and Heritage Setting.....	30–20
	30.5.3.2	Economic Setting.....	30–21
	30.5.3.3	Health and Community Well-being.....	30–22
	30.5.3.4	Current Use of Lands and Resources for Traditional Purposes.....	30–22
30.5.4		Skii Km Lax Ha.....	30–23
	30.5.4.1	Population and Economy.....	30–23
	30.5.4.2	Heritage.....	30–24
	30.5.4.3	Current Use of Lands and Resources for Traditional Purposes.....	30–24
30.6		First Nations Consultation Activities and Identified Issues.....	30–25
	30.6.1	First Nations Consultations – Pre-Application/Pre-Submission Stage.....	30–25
	30.6.2	Proposed First Nations Consultation - Application/EIS Review Stage.....	30–27
30.7		Summary of Adverse Effects Relating to Aboriginal Interests.....	30–28
	30.7.1	Project Design Changes to Mitigate Effects on Aboriginal Concerns.....	30–33
	30.7.2	Social Effects.....	30–35
	30.7.3	Community Infrastructure and Services.....	30–35
	30.7.3.1	Proposed Mitigation.....	30–36
	30.7.4	Education, Skills and Training.....	30–36
	30.7.4.1	Proposed Mitigation.....	30–36
	30.7.5	Community Well-being.....	30–36
	30.7.6	Project Traffic.....	30–38
	30.7.6.1	Proposed Mitigation.....	30–38
	30.7.7	Heritage Effects.....	30–39
	30.7.7.1	Archaeological and Heritage Sites.....	30–39
	30.7.7.2	Proposed Mitigation.....	30–39
	30.7.8	Economic Effects.....	30–40
	30.7.8.1	Employment.....	30–40
	30.7.8.2	Business Opportunities.....	30–42
	30.7.9	Health Effects.....	30–43
	30.7.9.1	Country Foods.....	30–43
	30.7.9.2	Air Quality.....	30–44
	30.7.9.3	Drinking Water Quality.....	30–45
30.8		Potential for Residual Effects to Impact Aboriginal Rights.....	30–46
	30.8.1	Fishing.....	30–46
	30.8.1.1	Fish Habitat Loss.....	30–47
	30.8.1.2	Surface Water Quantity Effects on Fish.....	30–47
	30.8.1.3	Surface Water Quality Effects on Fish.....	30–47
	30.8.1.4	Wetland Effects.....	30–49
	30.8.1.5	Proposed Mitigation for Fishing.....	30–49
	30.8.2	Hunting.....	30–50
	30.8.2.1	Moose.....	30–50
	30.8.2.2	Grizzly Bear.....	30–51



## Table of Contents

	30.8.2.3 Wetland Birds .....	30-51
	30.8.2.4 Mountain Goats.....	30-51
	30.8.2.5 Proposed Mitigation for Hunting .....	30-52
30.8.3	Gathering.....	30-52
	30.8.3.1 Proposed Mitigation for Gathering .....	30-52
30.8.4	Access to Areas of Importance to Aboriginal Groups.....	30-53
	30.8.4.1 Proposed Mitigation for Access.....	30-54
30.9	Assessment of Impacts on Aboriginal Rights.....	30-55
	30.9.1 Assessment Methods .....	30-55
	30.9.2 Context .....	30-55
	30.9.3 Tahltan Nation .....	30-56
	30.9.3.1 Impact on Fishing Rights .....	30-57
	30.9.3.2 Impact on Hunting Rights .....	30-61
	30.9.3.3 Impact on Gathering Rights .....	30-63
	30.9.3.4 Assessment of Overall Impacts on Tahltan Rights .....	30-65
	30.9.4 Gitanyow First Nation .....	30-65
	30.9.4.1 Impact on Fishing Rights .....	30-65
	30.9.4.2 Impact on Hunting Rights .....	30-67
	30.9.4.3 Impact on Gathering Rights .....	30-68
	30.9.4.4 Assessment of Overall Impacts on Gitanyow Rights.....	30-68
	30.9.5 Gitxsan Nation.....	30-69
	30.9.5.1 Impact on Fishing .....	30-69
	30.9.5.2 Impact on Hunting .....	30-70
	30.9.5.3 Impact on Gathering .....	30-71
	30.9.5.4 Assessment of Overall Impacts on Gitxsan Rights .....	30-71
	30.9.6 Skii km Lax Ha.....	30-71
	30.9.6.1 Impacts on Fishing Rights.....	30-72
	30.9.6.2 Impacts on Hunting Rights .....	30-73
	30.9.6.3 Impacts on Gathering Rights.....	30-74
	30.9.6.4 Assessment of Overall Impacts on Skii km Lax Ha Rights ....	30-76
30.10	Summary.....	30-76
	References.....	30-77
31	Navigable Waters .....	31-1
	31.1 Navigable Waters Regional Setting.....	31-1
	31.1.1 Physical Navigation Setting.....	31-1
	31.1.2 Commercial/Recreational Navigation Setting .....	31-2
	31.1.3 Aboriginal Navigation Setting .....	31-2
	31.2 Regulatory Framework .....	31-5
	31.2.1 Definition of Navigable Waters.....	31-7
	31.2.2 Minor Works and Waters ( <i>Navigable Waters Protection Act</i> ) Order.....	31-8
	31.2.2.1 Minor Navigable Waters.....	31-9
	31.2.3 Land Use Planning Objectives .....	31-10
	31.3 Baseline Studies.....	31-11
	31.3.1 Navigable Waters Baseline Study Area.....	31-11
	31.3.2 Methods.....	31-11
	31.3.2.1 Identifying Works .....	31-11
	31.3.2.2 Determining if a Waterway is a Minor Navigable Water .....	31-11
	31.3.3 Baseline Study Results .....	31-12

## Table of Contents

	31.3.3.1	Project Works Affecting Waterbodies .....	31-12
	31.3.3.2	Navigability Determination.....	31-15
	31.3.3.3	Summary .....	31-22
31.4	Assessment Boundaries .....		31-22
	31.4.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	31-22
	31.4.2	Temporal Boundaries .....	31-22
31.5	Valued Components.....		31-22
	31.5.1	Valued Components Included in Assessment.....	31-25
	31.5.2	Valued Components Excluded from Assessment.....	31-26
31.6	Scoping of Potential Effects on Navigable Waters.....		31-26
	31.6.1	Construction .....	31-33
	31.6.2	Operation .....	31-33
	31.6.3	Closure.....	31-33
	31.6.4	Post-closure .....	31-33
31.7	Potential for Residual Effects on Navigable Waters and Mitigation .....		31-33
	31.7.1	Accessibility to Safe Navigable Waters .....	31-34
	31.7.1.1	Safety: In-stream Works .....	31-34
	31.7.1.2	Accessibility: Loss of a Navigable Water.....	31-41
	31.7.1.3	Effects from Changes in Flow Volumes .....	31-42
	31.7.1.4	Mitigation to Improve Accessibility to Safe Navigable Waters.....	31-46
	31.7.1.5	Potential for Residual Effects .....	31-48
31.8	Significance of Residual Effects for Navigable Waters.....		31-48
	31.8.1.1	Safe Navigation.....	31-50
	31.8.1.2	Accessibility.....	31-55
	31.8.1.3	Overall Effect on Navigable Waters .....	31-55
31.9	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Navigable Waters .....		31-55
	31.9.1	Scoping of Potential Cumulative Effects.....	31-55
	31.9.1.1	Spatial Linkages with other Projects and Human Land Use Activities.....	31-55
	31.9.1.2	Temporal Linkages with other Projects and Human Actions .....	31-57
	31.9.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Navigable Waters .....	31-59
	31.9.2.1	Cumulative Effects on Safe Navigation on the Unuk River ...	31-59
	31.9.2.2	Cumulative Effects on Safe Navigation on the Bell-Irving River.....	31-59
	31.9.2.3	Cumulative Effects on Safe Navigation on Glacier Creek.....	31-59
	31.9.2.4	Cumulative Effects on Safe Navigation on Taft Creek.....	31-59
	31.9.2.5	Cumulative Effects on Accessibility on the Unuk River .....	31-61
	31.9.2.6	Cumulative Effects on Accessibility to the Bell-Irving River.....	31-61
	31.9.2.7	Overall Cumulative Effect on Navigable Waters.....	31-61
31.10	Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Navigable Waters ...		31-61
31.11	Conclusions.....		31-62
	References.....		31-65
32	Need for and Alternatives to the Proposed Project .....		32-1
	32.1	Need for and Purpose of the Project .....	32-1
	32.1.1	Need for the Project.....	32-1

## Table of Contents

	32.1.1.1	Economic Feasibility .....	32-2
	32.1.1.2	Revenues .....	32-4
	32.1.1.3	Employment .....	32-6
	32.1.2	Purpose of the Project .....	32-6
32.2		Alternatives to the Project .....	32-7
	32.2.1	Not Undertaking the Project .....	32-7
	32.2.1.1	Economic, Social, and Environmental Feasibility .....	32-7
	32.2.1.2	Potential Land Use Alternatives .....	32-9
	32.2.2	Changing the Location of the Project .....	32-9
	32.2.3	Changing the Timing of the Project .....	32-9
		References .....	32-11
<b>33</b>		<b>Alternative Means of Undertaking the KSM Project .....</b>	<b>33-1</b>
	33.1	Introduction .....	33-1
	33.2	Methods .....	33-2
	33.2.1	Basic Decision-making Process .....	33-2
	33.2.1.1	Decision-making Steps .....	33-2
	33.2.1.2	Decision-making Principles .....	33-5
	33.2.2	Performance Objectives and Attribute Ranking System .....	33-5
	33.2.2.1	Summary Comparison Table System .....	33-6
	33.3	Mining Method .....	33-7
	33.3.1	Purpose and Background .....	33-7
	33.3.2	Alternatives Identification .....	33-7
	33.3.2.1	Open Pit Mining .....	33-7
	33.3.2.2	Underground Mining .....	33-8
	33.3.3	Comparison of Alternatives .....	33-8
	33.3.3.1	Technical and Project Economic Considerations .....	33-9
	33.3.3.2	Environmental and Social Considerations .....	33-9
	33.3.4	Selected Alternative .....	33-16
	33.4	Mine Production Rates and Development Schedule .....	33-17
	33.4.1	Purpose and Background .....	33-17
	33.4.2	Evaluation Method .....	33-17
	33.4.3	Selected Alternative .....	33-18
	33.4.3.1	Production Rates .....	33-18
	33.4.3.2	Development Schedule .....	33-18
	33.5	Tailing Management .....	33-20
	33.5.1	Purpose and Background .....	33-20
	33.5.2	Method .....	33-20
	33.5.3	Results of the KSM Project Tailing Management Facility Alternatives Assessment .....	33-22
	33.6	Process Plant Location .....	33-33
	33.6.1	Purpose and Background .....	33-33
	33.6.2	Alternatives Identification .....	33-34
	33.6.2.1	Plant Site 1 .....	33-36
	33.6.2.2	Plant Sites 2A and 2B .....	33-36
	33.6.2.3	Plant Site 3 .....	33-36
	33.6.2.4	Plant Site 4 .....	33-37
	33.6.3	Comparison of Alternatives .....	33-37
	33.6.3.1	Technical and Project Economic Considerations .....	33-37

## Table of Contents

	33.6.3.2	Environmental and Social Considerations .....	33–38
	33.6.4	Selected Alternative.....	33–45
33.7		Access Routes .....	33–46
	33.7.1	Purpose and Background.....	33–46
	33.7.2	Mine Site Access Alternatives Assessment.....	33–46
	33.7.2.1	Alternatives Identification.....	33–46
	33.7.2.2	Comparison of Alternatives .....	33–49
	33.7.2.3	Selected Alternative .....	33–55
	33.7.3	Processing and Tailing Management Area Access Alternatives Assessment.....	33–56
	33.7.3.1	Alternatives Identification.....	33–56
	33.7.3.2	Comparison of Alternatives .....	33–57
	33.7.3.3	Selected Alternative .....	33–60
33.8		Ore Handling.....	33–61
	33.8.1	Purpose and Background.....	33–61
	33.8.2	Alternatives Identification .....	33–61
	33.8.2.1	Ore Slurry Pipeline .....	33–61
	33.8.2.2	Ore Conveyor Belt .....	33–64
	33.8.3	Comparison of Alternatives.....	33–64
	33.8.3.1	Technical and Project Economic Considerations.....	33–64
	33.8.3.2	Environmental and Social Considerations .....	33–64
	33.8.4	Selected Alternative.....	33–68
33.9		Ore Concentrate Transport.....	33–68
	33.9.1	Purpose and Background.....	33–68
	33.9.2	Alternatives Identification .....	33–71
	33.9.2.1	Route 1 .....	33–71
	33.9.2.2	Route 2.....	33–71
	33.9.2.3	Route 3.....	33–71
	33.9.3	Comparison of Alternatives.....	33–72
	33.9.3.1	Technical and Project Economic Considerations.....	33–72
	33.9.3.2	Environmental and Social Considerations .....	33–77
	33.9.4	Selected Alternative.....	33–79
33.10		Gold Recovery Method.....	33–79
	33.10.1	Purpose and Background.....	33–79
	33.10.2	Alternatives Identification .....	33–81
	33.10.2.1	Cyanidation.....	33–82
	33.10.2.2	Thiourea .....	33–82
	33.10.2.3	Thiosulphate.....	33–82
	33.10.2.4	Thiocyanate.....	33–83
	33.10.2.5	Bromine.....	33–83
	33.10.2.6	Chlorine.....	33–83
	33.10.2.7	Excluded Gold Recovery Techniques.....	33–83
	33.10.3	Comparison of Alternatives.....	33–84
	33.10.3.1	Technical and Project Economic Considerations.....	33–84
	33.10.3.2	Environmental and Social Considerations .....	33–92
	33.10.4	Selected Alternative.....	33–94
33.11		Waste Rock Disposal .....	33–97
	33.11.1	Purpose and Background.....	33–97
	33.11.2	Alternatives Identification .....	33–97

## Table of Contents

33.11.2.1	Pre-assessment	33-97
33.11.2.2	Resultant Rock Storage Facility Alternatives	33-99
33.11.3	Comparison of Alternatives	33-101
33.11.3.1	Technical and Project Economic Considerations	33-101
33.11.3.2	Environmental and Social Considerations	33-107
33.11.4	Selected Alternatives	33-108
33.12	Water Management	33-108
33.12.1	Tailing Management Facility Discharge Direction	33-111
33.12.1.1	Alternatives Identification	33-111
33.12.1.2	Comparison of Alternatives	33-112
33.12.1.3	Selected Alternative	33-116
33.12.2	Water Storage Dam Type	33-117
33.12.2.1	Purpose and Background	33-117
33.12.2.2	Alternatives Identification	33-117
33.12.2.3	Comparison of Alternatives	33-119
33.12.2.4	Selected Alternative	33-120
33.12.3	Mine Contact Water Treatment	33-120
33.12.3.1	Purpose and Background	33-120
33.12.3.2	Alternatives Identification	33-120
33.12.3.3	Comparison of Alternatives	33-123
33.12.3.4	Selected Alternative	33-128
33.12.4	Selenium Treatment	33-128
33.12.4.1	Alternatives Identification	33-129
33.12.4.2	Comparison of Alternatives	33-132
33.12.4.3	Selected Alternative	33-136
33.13	Ore Comminution	33-136
33.13.1	Purpose and Background	33-136
33.13.2	Alternative Identification	33-136
33.13.2.1	High Pressure Grinding Rolls	33-138
33.13.3	Comparison of Alternatives	33-140
33.13.3.1	Technical and Project Economic Considerations	33-140
33.13.3.2	Environmental and Social Considerations	33-144
33.13.4	Selected Alternative	33-144
33.14	Closure and Reclamation	33-144
33.14.1	Tailing Management Facility	33-145
33.14.2	Rock Storage Facilities	33-145
33.14.3	Coulter Creek Access Road	33-145
33.15	Employee Work Schedules	33-146
33.16	Employee Living Conditions	33-146
33.17	Power Supply	33-147
33.18	Summary of Alternatives Evaluation	33-148
	References	33-151
34	Effects of the Environment on the Proposed Project	34-1
34.1	Climate and Meteorology	34-2
34.1.1	Mine Site	34-3
34.1.2	Processing and Tailing Management Area	34-3
34.1.3	Storms (High Precipitation)	34-4
34.1.3.1	Rainstorms and Thunderstorms	34-5

## Table of Contents

	34.1.3.2 Snowstorms.....	34-7
34.1.4	Drought (Low Precipitation) .....	34-8
34.1.5	Normal Precipitation.....	34-9
34.1.6	Extreme Temperatures and Freeze-Thaw Cycles .....	34-10
34.1.7	Changes in Permafrost.....	34-11
34.1.8	Climate Change .....	34-11
	34.1.8.1 Concerns Regarding Climate Change Risk to the Project.....	34-12
	34.1.8.2 Regulatory Context of Climate Change .....	34-12
	34.1.8.3 Scope of Climate Change.....	34-13
	34.1.8.4 Mitigation Options Regarding Climate Change Uncertainty.....	34-14
	34.1.8.5 The Proponent’s Management Approach to Mitigating Climate Change Risk .....	34-16
34.2	Floods .....	34-24
34.3	Geophysical Effects .....	34-25
	34.3.1 Landslide Geohazards.....	34-25
	34.3.2 Snow Avalanches .....	34-26
	34.3.3 Glaciers.....	34-31
	34.3.4 Seismic Activity .....	34-37
	34.3.5 Volcanic Activity.....	34-39
34.4	Wildfires .....	34-41
34.5	Wildlife .....	34-42
	References.....	34-44
<b>35</b>	<b>Environmental Effects of Accidents and Malfunctions .....</b>	<b>35-1</b>
35.1	Introduction.....	35-1
35.2	Geotechnical Failure Modes and Effects Analysis .....	35-4
	35.2.1 Introduction .....	35-4
	35.2.2 Methodology.....	35-8
	35.2.3 Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Components.....	35-10
	35.2.3.1 Mine Area/Component.....	35-10
	35.2.3.2 Identification Code.....	35-10
	35.2.3.3 Failure Mode.....	35-10
	35.2.3.4 Effects .....	35-11
	35.2.3.5 Period of Interest.....	35-11
	35.2.3.6 Likelihood .....	35-11
	35.2.3.7 Consequences.....	35-13
	35.2.3.8 Risk Ratings (Biological, Regulatory, and Public Concern, and Health and Safety).....	35-15
	35.2.3.9 Level of Confidence.....	35-15
	35.2.3.10 High Concern Issue.....	35-15
	35.2.3.11 Direct Costs.....	35-15
	35.2.3.12 Mitigation/Comments .....	35-17
	35.2.3.13 Representation of Results.....	35-17
35.2.4	Risk Evaluation Summary .....	35-17
35.2.5	Yellow Moderately Significant Risks.....	35-18
	35.2.5.1 Group A - Processing and Tailing Management Area (PTMA, Figure 35.2-3 and Worksheet Figures 35.2-4a to 35.2-4c).....	35-18

## Table of Contents

35.2.5.2	Group B - Mine Site (Figure 35.2-5 and Worksheet Figures 35.2-6a to 35.2-6h).....	35-18
35.2.5.3	Group C – Tunnels (Figure 35.2-7 and Worksheet Figures 35.2-8a to 35.2-8i).....	35-20
35.2.5.4	Group D – Access, Power, Fuel Distribution, and Explosives (Figure 35.2-9 and Worksheet Figures 35.2-10a to 35.2-10h).....	35-20
35.3	Catastrophic Dam Break Analysis.....	35-23
35.3.1	Tailing Management Facility Dams.....	35-56
35.3.2	Water Storage Dam Break.....	35-59
35.4	Conclusion.....	35-61
	References.....	35-62
<b>36</b>	<b>Capacity of Renewable Resources.....</b>	<b>36-1</b>
36.1	Introduction.....	36-1
36.1.1	Regulatory Context.....	36-1
36.1.2	Scientific Background.....	36-2
36.2	Methodology.....	36-3
36.2.1	Identification of Renewable Resources.....	36-3
36.2.2	Identification of Parties.....	36-4
36.2.3	Assessment of Capacity of Natural Resource.....	36-4
36.3	Spatial and Temporal Boundaries.....	36-4
36.3.1	Spatial Boundaries.....	36-4
36.3.2	Temporal Boundaries.....	36-4
36.4	Identification of Renewable Resources.....	36-5
36.4.1	Present and Future Use of Renewable Resources.....	36-5
36.4.2	Nisga’a Nation.....	36-5
36.4.3	First Nation Rights and Interests.....	36-5
36.4.4	Commercial and Non-Commercial Land Uses.....	36-6
36.5	Potential Effects on Capacity of Renewable Resources.....	36-9
36.5.1	Air Quality.....	36-9
36.5.2	Fish.....	36-10
36.5.3	Wildlife.....	36-11
36.5.3.1	Moose.....	36-11
36.5.3.2	Mountain Goat.....	36-13
36.5.3.3	Grizzly Bear.....	36-15
36.5.3.4	Wetland Birds.....	36-16
36.6	Conclusions.....	36-17
	References.....	36-18
<b>37</b>	<b>Cumulative Environmental Effects Assessment.....</b>	<b>37-1</b>
37.1	Introduction.....	37-1
37.2	Regional Projects and Activities.....	37-3
37.2.1	Past Projects and Activities.....	37-6
37.2.2	Present Projects and Activities.....	37-7
37.2.3	Reasonably Foreseeable Future Projects and Activities.....	37-8
37.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment Framework.....	37-8
37.4	Methods.....	37-8
37.4.1	Issue Scoping.....	37-12

## Table of Contents

	37.4.2	Identification of Potential Cumulative Effects .....	37-12
37.5	Boundaries .....		37-13
	37.5.1	Spatial .....	37-13
	37.5.2	Temporal.....	37-13
37.6	Cumulative Effects Assessment on Valued Components .....		37-14
	37.6.1	Greenhouse Gas Emissions (Climate Change) .....	37-14
	37.6.1.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Greenhouse Gas Emissions.....	37-14
	37.6.1.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Greenhouse Gas Emissions .....	37-16
	37.6.1.3	Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects for Greenhouse Gas Emissions.....	37-16
	37.6.1.4	Summary of Residual Cumulative Effect for Greenhouse Gas Emissions.....	37-17
	37.6.2	Air Quality.....	37-17
	37.6.2.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Air Quality .....	37-17
	37.6.2.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment Boundaries for Air Quality .....	37-17
	37.6.2.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Air Quality .....	37-19
	37.6.2.4	Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Air Quality .....	37-21
	37.6.2.5	Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects of Change in Ambient Air Quality .....	37-21
	37.6.3	Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils .....	37-22
	37.6.3.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils .....	37-22
	37.6.3.2	Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils.....	37-22
	37.6.3.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils.....	37-27
	37.6.3.4	Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Soil Quantity and Soil Quality .....	37-28
	37.6.3.5	Summary of Residual Cumulative Environmental Effects on Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils .....	37-29
	37.6.4	Groundwater.....	37-30
	37.6.4.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Groundwater .....	37-30
	37.6.4.2	Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Groundwater .....	37-33
	37.6.4.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Groundwater .....	37-35
	37.6.4.4	Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Groundwater .....	37-36
	37.6.4.5	Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Groundwater...	37-37
	37.6.5	Surface Water .....	37-37
	37.6.5.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Surface Water.....	37-37
	37.6.5.2	Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Surface Water .....	37-41
	37.6.5.3	Cumulative Effects on Surface Water.....	37-43



## Table of Contents

	37.6.5.4 Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Surface Water .....	37-44
	37.6.5.5 Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Surface Water.....	37-44
37.6.6	Fish and Aquatic Habitat .....	37-49
	37.6.6.1 Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects for Fish Valued Components (Bull Trout, Dolly Varden, Rainbow Trout/Steelhead, and Pacific Salmon).....	37-49
	37.6.6.2 Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects for Aquatic Habitat.....	37-49
	37.6.6.3 Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Fish Valued Components and Aquatic Habitat .....	37-49
	37.6.6.4 Cumulative Effects Assessment for Fish Valued Components (Bull Trout, Dolly Varden, Rainbow Trout/Steelhead, and Pacific Salmon) and Aquatic Habitat....	37-51
	37.6.6.5 Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Fish Valued Components (Bull Trout, Dolly Varden, Rainbow Trout/Steelhead, and Pacific Salmon) and Aquatic Habitat....	37-56
	37.6.6.6 Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Fish Valued Components (Bull Trout, Dolly Varden, Rainbow Trout/Steelhead, and Pacific Salmon) and Aquatic Habitat....	37-58
37.6.7	Wetlands.....	37-79
	37.6.7.1 Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects to Wetlands ...	37-79
	37.6.7.2 Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Wetlands .....	37-79
	37.6.7.3 Cumulative Effects Assessment for Wetlands .....	37-80
	37.6.7.4 Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Wetland Extent and Function.....	37-82
	37.6.7.5 Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Wetland Extent and Function.....	37-82
37.6.8	Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	37-83
	37.6.8.1 Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects to Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	37-83
	37.6.8.2 Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	37-84
	37.6.8.3 Cumulative Effects Assessment for Terrestrial Ecosystems....	37-89
	37.6.8.4 Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	37-108
	37.6.8.5 Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	37-116
37.6.9	Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat .....	37-117
	37.6.9.1 Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Wildlife Valued Components.....	37-117
	37.6.9.2 Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat .....	37-117
	37.6.9.3 Cumulative Effects on Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat.....	37-125
	37.6.9.4 Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat .....	37-149
	37.6.9.5 Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Wildlife Valued Components.....	37-155

## Table of Contents

37.6.10	Noise.....	37-155
37.6.10.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Noise .....	37-155
37.6.10.2	Cumulative Assessment Boundaries and Determination for Noise.....	37-155
37.6.10.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Noise.....	37-157
37.6.10.4	Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Noise.....	37-157
37.6.10.5	Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Noise.....	37-157
37.6.11	Economics.....	37-157
37.6.11.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects for Economics.....	37-157
37.6.11.2	Cumulative Assessment Boundaries on Economics .....	37-163
37.6.11.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Economics .....	37-165
37.6.11.4	Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Economics.....	37-167
37.6.11.5	Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Economics ...	37-168
37.6.12	Heritage.....	37-168
37.6.12.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Heritage..	37-168
37.6.12.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Heritage .....	37-175
37.6.12.3	Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Heritage .....	37-175
37.6.13	Social.....	37-176
37.6.13.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects for Social Valued Components.....	37-176
37.6.13.2	Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Social Valued Components.....	37-176
37.6.13.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Social Valued Components.....	37-178
37.6.13.4	Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Social Valued Components.....	37-179
37.6.13.5	Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Social Valued Components.....	37-182
37.6.14	Land Use.....	37-189
37.6.14.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Land Use	37-189
37.6.14.2	Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Land Use.....	37-189
37.6.14.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Land Use.....	37-192
37.6.14.4	Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Land Use.....	37-197
37.6.14.5	Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Land Use .....	37-198
37.6.15	Visual and Aesthetic Resources .....	37-201
37.6.15.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects to Visual and Aesthetic Resources .....	37-201
37.6.15.2	Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Visual and Aesthetic Resources.....	37-202
37.6.15.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Visual and Aesthetic Resources.....	37-206
37.6.15.4	Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Visual and Aesthetic Resources.....	37-211
37.6.15.5	Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Visual and Aesthetic Resources.....	37-211

## Table of Contents

37.6.16	Human Health.....	37-211
37.6.16.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Human Health.....	37-211
37.6.16.2	Cumulative Assessment Boundaries for Human Health.....	37-212
37.6.16.3	Additional Mitigation and Monitoring for Cumulative Effects on Human Health.....	37-220
37.6.16.4	Summary of Residual Cumulative effects on Human Health.....	37-221
37.6.17	Navigable Waters.....	37-222
37.6.17.1	Summary of Project-specific Residual Effects on Navigable Waters.....	37-222
37.6.17.2	Cumulative Effects Assessment Boundaries for Navigable Waters.....	37-225
37.6.17.3	Cumulative Effects Assessment for Navigable Waters.....	37-225
37.6.17.4	Cumulative Effects on Accessibility on the Unuk River.....	37-228
37.6.17.5	Cumulative Effects on Accessibility to the Bell-Irving River.....	37-228
37.6.17.6	Overall Cumulative Effect on Navigable Waters.....	37-228
37.7	Summary.....	37-228
	References.....	37-234
<b>38</b>	<b>Follow-up Program.....</b>	<b>38-1</b>
38.1	Introduction.....	38-1
38.1.1	Adaptive Management.....	38-2
38.2	Valued Components Excluded from a Follow-up Program.....	38-2
38.2.1	Geotechnical Stability of Pit Walls and Waste.....	38-4
38.2.2	Geochemical Stability of Waste Rock, Tailing, and Pit Walls (Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage Monitoring).....	38-5
38.2.3	Post-construction Requirements.....	38-5
38.2.4	Air Quality.....	38-6
38.2.5	Noise.....	38-7
38.2.6	Glacier Monitoring.....	38-7
38.2.7	Vegetation.....	38-7
38.2.8	Archaeology.....	38-8
38.3	Valued Components Included in a Follow-up Program.....	38-8
38.3.1	Objectives of the Follow-up Program.....	38-12
38.3.2	Planned Follow-up Programs.....	38-12
38.3.2.1	Geohazards.....	38-12
38.3.2.2	Groundwater Quantity and Quality.....	38-13
38.3.2.3	Surface Water Quantity.....	38-14
38.3.2.4	Surface Water Quality.....	38-15
38.3.2.5	Fish and Aquatic Habitat.....	38-17
38.3.2.6	Wetlands.....	38-21
38.3.2.7	Wildlife.....	38-23
38.4	Follow-up Program Reporting.....	38-26
	References.....	38-27
<b>39</b>	<b>Conclusions.....</b>	<b>39-1</b>
39.1	Introduction.....	39-1

## Table of Contents

39.2	Summary of All Residual Effects and Proposed Mitigation.....	39–32
39.3	Summary of Significant (Major) Residual Effects .....	39–33
39.3.1	Moose (Wildlife) .....	39–33
39.3.2	Employment and Income (Economic).....	39–34
39.3.3	Community Well-being (Social) .....	39–36
39.4	Summary of Not Significant (Moderate Residual Effects).....	39–37
39.4.1	Air Quality.....	39–38
39.4.2	Soil Loss .....	39–39
39.4.3	Groundwater Quantity .....	39–39
39.4.4	Groundwater Quality .....	39–40
39.4.5	Surface Water Quantity .....	39–41
39.4.6	Surface Water Quality .....	39–41
39.4.7	Fish and Aquatic Habitat .....	39–42
39.4.8	Wetlands.....	39–43
39.4.9	Avalanche Track Ecosystems .....	39–44
39.4.10	Old Forest Ecosystems .....	39–45
39.4.11	Mountain Goats .....	39–46
39.4.12	Grizzly Bears .....	39–46
39.4.13	Wetland Birds.....	39–47
39.4.14	Noise.....	39–47
39.4.15	Business Opportunities and Economic Development.....	39–48
39.4.16	Land Use.....	39–49
39.4.17	Social – Well-being (Traffic Safety) .....	39–50
39.4.18	Human Health – Noise .....	39–50
39.4.19	Human Health – Air Emissions .....	39–51
39.5	Table of Conditions .....	39–52
39.6	Nisga’a Nation Interests.....	39–52
39.7	First Nations Interests .....	39–64
39.8	Moving Forward .....	39–68
	References.....	39–70

## LIST OF APPENDICES

Appendix 2-A – MMER Schedule 2 Amendment Application

Appendix 2-B – *International Rivers Improvements Act* Licence Application

Appendix 2-C – Explosives Permit Application

Appendix 3-A – Initial KSM Project Brochure (2008)

Appendix 3-B – KSM Project Factsheets (2010-2012)

Appendix 3-C – KSM Project Posters (2010-2012)

Appendix 3-D – KSM Project Economics Infographic (2012)

Appendix 3-E – Careers in Mining Infosheets (2011-2012)

## ***Table of Contents***

---

- Appendix 3-F – Summer 2010 KSM Project Open House PowerPoint Presentation and Notification
- Appendix 3-G – 2011 KSM Project Advertorials, Meeting Notices, and Newspaper Articles
- Appendix 3-H – 2012 KSM Project Advertorials, Meeting Notices, and Newspaper Articles
- Appendix 3-I – Feedback Forms
- Appendix 3-J – Summary of Communications with Nisga'a Nation
- Appendix 3-K – Nisga'a Nation Issues and Responses
- Appendix 3-L – Proposed Issues and Responses Tracking Table for Application/EIS Review
- Appendix 3-M – Summary of Communications with First Nations
- Appendix 3-N – First Nations Issues and Responses
- Appendix 3-O – Tahltan Community Meetings Outreach Materials
- Appendix 3-P – Summary of Communications with Government Agencies and Local Governments
- Appendix 3-Q – Government Agencies and Local Government Issues and Responses
- Appendix 3-R – Summary of Communications with the Public and Stakeholders
- Appendix 3-S – Public and Stakeholder Issues and Responses
- Appendix 4-A – Summary of KSM Project Areas, Major Project Components, Phase, and Reclamation
- Appendix 4-B – KSM Property Claims Information
- Appendix 4-C – 2012 KSM Prefeasibility Study
- Appendix 4-D – KSM Mine Plan
- Appendix 4-E – Mitchell Pit Landslide Generated Wave Modelling
- Appendix 4-F – Preliminary Interpretation of the Basal Surface of the Snowfield Landslide
- Appendix 4-G – Snowfield Landslide Site Investigation Summary
- Appendix 4-H – Preliminary Snowfield Landslide Management Plan
- Appendix 4-I – Mitchell Deposit Geotechnical Characterization

## ***Table of Contents***

---

- Appendix 4-J – 2012 Geotechnical Design of Rock Storage Facilities and Design of Associated Water Management Facilities
- Appendix 4-K – Preliminary Assessment of Open Pit Slope Instability due to the Mitchell Block Cave
- Appendix 4-L – Iron Cap Deposit Geotechnical Characterization
- Appendix 4-M – Rock Storage Facilities Design Report
- Appendix 4-N – 5 Year Increment Mine Area Water Management Plans
- Appendix 4-O – KSM 2011 Memo on Mitchell Glacier Sub-glacial Drainage Patterns
- Appendix 4-P – Temporary Water Treatment Plants for KSM Construction Period
- Appendix 4-Q – 2012 Site Investigation Report for the Mine Area
- Appendix 4-R – KSM High Density Sludge Water Treatment Plant Feasibility Report
- Appendix 4-S – KSM Project HDS Pilot Plant
- Appendix 4-T – HDS Water Treatment Plant Design and Cost Update for Increased Capacity
- Appendix 4-U – KSM Water Treatment Plant Proposed Layout and Costs for Sludge Disposal Facility
- Appendix 4-V – Laboratory Investigation of Hexavalent Selenium Removal from Kerr Waste Rock Leachate Water
- Appendix 4-W – Active Avalanche Management Plan for the KSM Project
- Appendix 4-X – Water Well Access Plans/Profiles, Mass Diagrams, Cross Sections
- Appendix 4-Y – Cyanide Detoxification of Seabridge Gold Plant Wash Water
- Appendix 4-Z – KSM Process Flow Diagrams and Mass Balance Figures
- Appendix 4-AA – 5 Year Increment PTMA Water Management Plans
- Appendix 4-AB – 2012 TMF Site Investigation
- Appendix 4-AC – 2012 Engineering Design Update of Tailing Management Facility
- Appendix 4-AD – Tailing management Facility Access Roads Plans/Profiles, Mass Diagrams, Cross Sections
- Appendix 4-AE – North Treaty Valley Access Roads Plans/Profiles, Mass Diagrams, Cross Sections, Typical Sections

## ***Table of Contents***

---

- Appendix 4-AF – Treaty Creek Access Road Plans/Profiles, Mass Diagrams, Cross Sections, Typical Sections
- Appendix 4-AG – Coulter Creek Access Road Plans/Profiles, Mass Diagrams, Cross Sections, Typical Sections
- Appendix 4-AH – General Arrangements – Routes, Bridges, Major Culverts
- Appendix 4-AI – Evaluation of Alternate Glacier Access Routes, KSM Project 2012
- Appendix 4-AJ – 287 KV Treaty Creek Transmission Line
- Appendix 4-AK – Treaty Creek Transmission Line Geotechnical Assessment
- Appendix 6-A – Greenhouse Gas Emissions Scoping Table
- Appendix 7-A – Air Dispersion Detailed Model Plan 2012 Addendum
- Appendix 7-B – 2008 to 2011 Meteorology Baseline Report
- Appendix 7-C – 2008 to 2011 Air Quality Baseline Report
- Appendix 7-D – Air Quality Scoping Table
- Appendix 8-A – 2009 Soils and Terrain Baseline Report
- Appendix 8-B – 2011 Terrain Maps within the KSM Project Local Study Area
- Appendix 8-C – 2011 Soil Maps within the KSM Project Local Study Area
- Appendix 8-D – Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils Scoping Table
- Appendix 9-A – Geohazard and Risk Assessment, Minesite and Coulter Creek Access
- Appendix 9-B – KSM Project Geohazard Risk Reduction Summary: Rev B
- Appendix 9-C – KSM Geohazards: OPC Pre-feasibility Geohazards Risk Reduction: Rev C
- Appendix 9-D – KSM Project Geohazard Risk Assessment of Updated Facility Locations
- Appendix 9-E – KSM Project Geohazard and Risk Assessment, Tailings Management Facility, Treaty Creek and Teigen Creek Access: Rev C
- Appendix 9-F – KSM Project Terrain Stability Field Assessment of the Proposed Coulter Creek, Teigen Creek and Tunnel Spur Access Roads
- Appendix 9-G – KSM Project Terrain Stability Field Assessment of the Proposed Treaty Creek, North Treaty and Tunnel Adit Access Roads
- Appendix 9-H – Preliminary Geotechnical Assessment of the Snowfield Landslide

## ***Table of Contents***

---

Appendix 9-I – Geohazards Scoping Table

Appendix 10-A – 2008 to 2012 Cumulative Geochemistry Baseline Report

Appendix 10-B – Access Roads Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage Potential Assessment

Appendix 10-C – KSM Project 2012 to 2013 Geochemistry Baseline Updates

Appendix 11-A – 2008 Hydrogeology Baseline Report

Appendix 11-B – 2009 and 2010 Hydrogeology Baseline Report

Appendix 11-C – 2012 Hydrogeology Baseline Data Report

Appendix 11-D – Hydrogeological Modelling Report

Appendix 11-E – Updated Hydrogeology Modelling Report, June 2013

Appendix 11-F – Water Storage Facility Seepage Mitigation Modelling

Appendix 11-G – Tailing management Facility Hydrogeological Modelling Assessment

Appendix 11-H – Groundwater Quantity Scoping Table

Appendix 11-I – 2010 Open Pit Depressurization Analyses

Appendix 12-A – Groundwater Quality Scoping Table

Appendix 13-A – Surface Water Hydrology Assessment Report

Appendix 13-B – KSM UBC Watershed Modelling

Appendix 13-C – 2011 Glacier Monitoring Summary Report

Appendix 13-D – Surface Water Quantity Scoping Tables

Appendix 14-A – 2007-2011 Water Quality Baseline

Appendix 14-B – Stream Water Quality Data, KSM Project, 2012

Appendix 14-C – Lake Water Quality Data, KSM Project, 2012

Appendix 14-D – Baseline and Pilot Water Treatment Plant Toxicity Testing

Appendix 14-E – Surface Water Quality Scoping Table

Appendix 14-F – Mine Site Water Model Report

Appendix 14-G – Processing and Tailing Management Area Water Model Report



## ***Table of Contents***

---

Appendix 14-H – Water Quality Model Results

Appendix 14-I – Mine Site Water Treatment Plant Staged Discharge Schedule

Appendix 15-A – 2008 Baseline Study Report Chapter 10 – Fisheries

Appendix 15-B – 2008 Baseline Study Report, Chapter 9 – Aquatic Ecology

Appendix 15-C – 2009 Fish and Fish Habitat Baseline Report

Appendix 15-D – 2009 Aquatic Resources Baseline Report

Appendix 15-E – 2010 Fish and Fish Habitat Baseline Report

Appendix 15-F – 2010 Water Quality and Aquatic Resources Baseline Report

Appendix 15-G – 2011 Fish and Fish Habitat Baseline Report

Appendix 15-H – 2011 Fish and Fish Habitat Compensation Baseline Report

Appendix 15-I – 2012 Fish and Fish Habitat Baseline Report

Appendix 15-J – Sediment Quality Data, 2012 and Historical

Appendix 15-K – Fish and Aquatic Habitat Scoping Table

Appendix 15-L – Sediment Quality Modelling

Appendix 15-M – Nitrogen and Phosphorus Load Calculations

Appendix 15-N – South Teigen and North Treaty Creeks Instream Flow Assessment Data

Appendix 15-O – North Treaty and South Teigen Creek Instream Flow Threshold Assessment

Appendix 15-P – Teigen Creek Instream Flow Threshold Assessment

Appendix 15-Q – MMER Fish Habitat Compensation Plan

Appendix 15-R – HADD Fish Habitat Compensation Plan

Appendix 15-S – KSM Project: 2012 Fish Bearing Status Assessment Memorandum

Appendix 15-T – KSM Project: Fish Distribution Maps

Appendix 16-A – 2009 Wetlands Baseline Report

Appendix 16-B – Wetland Habitat Compensation Plan

Appendix 16-C – Wetlands Scoping Table

## ***Table of Contents***

---

Appendix 17-A – 2009 Vegetation and Ecosystem Mapping Baseline Report

Appendix 17-B – Terrestrial Ecosystem Mapping

Appendix 17-C – Assessment of Culturally Important Plants

Appendix 17-D – Terrestrial Ecosystems Scoping Table

Appendix 18-A – 2009 Wildlife Characterization Baseline Report

Appendix 18-B – 2009 Wildlife Habitat Suitability Baseline Report

Appendix 18-C – 2008 and 2009 Grizzly Bear DNA Baseline Report

Appendix 18-D – 2010 and 2011 Mountain Goat Aerial Surveys, Brucejack Project

Appendix 18-E – Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Scoping Table

Appendix 19-A – KSM Project Environmental Noise Assessment

Appendix 19-B – Noise Scoping Table

Appendix 20-A – 2012 Economic Baseline Report

Appendix 20-B – 2012 Economic Model Report

Appendix 20-C – Third Party Assessment of KSM Project 2012 Economic Model Report

Appendix 20-D – Economics Scoping Table

Appendix 21-A – Archaeological Impact Assessment, Final Report – Heritage Inspection Permit  
2008-0128

Appendix 21-B – Archaeological Impact Assessment, Final Report – Heritage Inspection Permit  
2012-0192

Appendix 21-C – Heritage Scoping Table

Appendix 22-A – 2012 Social Baseline Report

Appendix 22-B – Social Scoping Table

Appendix 22-C – Highways 37 and 37A Traffic Effects Assessment

Appendix 23-A – Non-traditional Land Use Baseline Report

Appendix 23-B – Land Use Scoping Table

Appendix 24-A – 2009 and 2010 Visual Quality Baseline Report

## ***Table of Contents***

---

- Appendix 24-B – KSM Project 2009 and 2010 Visual Quality Baseline Report Addendum
- Appendix 24-C – Visual and Aesthetic Resources Scoping Table
- Appendix 25-A – 2009 Country Foods Baseline Report
- Appendix 25-B – Baseline Country Foods Risk Assessment of Chinook Salmon in Teigen Creek, 2010
- Appendix 25-C – Country Foods Screening Level Risk Assessment for the Processing and Tailings Management Area
- Appendix 25-D – Country Foods Screening Level Risk Assessment for the Mine Site
- Appendix 25-E – Human Health Scoping Table
- Appendix 27-A – Access Roads - Deactivation Plan
- Appendix 27-B – Reclaimed and Disturbed Areas, All Project Phases
- Appendix 29-A – Nisga’a Social, Economic, Resource Use, and Cultural Survey Statistical Report
- Appendix 29-B – Nisga’a Business Survey Statistical Report
- Appendix 29-C – Nisga’a Guidelines Focus Group Report
- Appendix 29-D – Impacts of Mining Operations on Aboriginal Communities in the Northwest Territories and Labrador: Case Studies and Literature Review
- Appendix 30-A – Tahltan Nation Traditional Knowledge and Use Desk-based Research Report
- Appendix 30-B – Skii km Lax Ha Traditional Knowledge and Use Research Report
- Appendix 30-C – Gitanyow First Nation Traditional Knowledge and Use Desk-based Research Report
- Appendix 30-D – Gitxsan Nation Traditional Knowledge and Use Desk-based Research Report
- Appendix 30-E – Metis Interests Desktop Study
- Appendix 31-A – KSM Project Navigable Waters Scoping and Minor Works, and Waters Order Screening Tables
- Appendix 31-B – KSM Project Potentially Navigable Streams
- Appendix 31-C – Detailed Engineering Design Drawings for Bridge Crossings, Transmission Line, and Pipe Intakes

## Table of Contents

---

Appendix 33-A – Regulatory and Best Practices Guidance Documents Applicable to Alternatives Assessments for KSM Project	
Appendix 33-B – Assessment of Alternatives for KSM Project Tailing Management Facility	
Appendix 33-C – International Cyanide Management Code Principles and Standards of Practice	
Appendix 33-D – Comminution Circuit Energy Comparison between HPGR Circuit and SABC Circuit	
Appendix 33-E – KSM Water Storage Dam Value Engineering Study Report	
Appendix 34-A – Memorandum - KSM Ground Temperatures Potential Permafrost Occurrence	
Appendix 34-B – Mitchell Glacier Stability Study	
Appendix 35-A – Failure Mode & Effects Analysis (FMEA) Summary Table for October 2009 Workshop	
Appendix 35-B – Dam Break and Inundation Study for Water Storage Dam	
Appendix 35-C – Dam Break and Inundation Study for Tailing Management Facility	

### LIST OF FIGURES

Figure	Page
Figure 1.5-1. Mineral Claims in the Project Area .....	1–17
Figure 1.5-2. Placer Claims in the KSM Project Area .....	1–18
Figure 1.6-1. Location of the Project .....	1–20
Figure 1.6-2. Regional Setting.....	1–21
Figure 1.6-3. Local Community Setting .....	1–22
Figure 1.7-1. KSM Project Layout: End of Operation.....	1–29
Figure 1.7-2. Mine Site Plan: End of Operation .....	1–31
Figure 1.7-3. KSM Project Processing and Tailing Management Area: Location and Main Infrastructure.....	1–33
Figure 2.1-1. British Columbia Environmental Assessment Process under the British Columbia <i>Environmental Assessment Act</i> (2002) .....	2–6
Figure 2.1-2. Comprehensive Study Environmental Assessment Process under the <i>Canadian Environmental Assessment Act</i> (1992).....	2–7

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 2.1-3. KSM Project: Environmental Assessment Review Schedule .....	2-17
Figure 3.2-1. Proposed KSM Project in Relation to the Nass Area, the Nass Wildlife Area, and Nisga'a Lands .....	3-6
Figure 3.3-1. Proposed KSM Project and Tahltan Nation Traditional Territory.....	3-17
Figure 3.3-2. Proposed KSM Project and Gitanyow Traditional Territory.....	3-20
Figure 3.3-3. Proposed KSM Project and Skii km Lax Ha and Gitxsan Nation Traditional Territories .....	3-21
Figure 4.1-1. KSM Project Layout: End of Operation.....	4-3
Figure 4.1-2. Overview of the Mine Site at End of Construction .....	(map pocket)
Figure 4.1-3. Overview of the Mine Site at End of Operation.....	(map pocket)
Figure 4.1-4. Overview of the Processing and Tailing Management Area at End of Construction .....	(map pocket)
Figure 4.1-5. Overview of the Processing and Tailing Management Area at End of Operation .....	(map pocket)
Figure 4.4-1. Mine Site Area Bedrock Geology .....	4-7
Figure 4.4-2. Mine Site Lithology and Structural Geology.....	4-9
Figure 4.4-3. Sulphurets Deposit Geology Cross-section Looking Northeast .....	4-11
Figure 4.4-4. Kerr Deposit Geology Cross-section Looking North .....	4-12
Figure 4.4-5. Mitchell Deposit Geology Cross-section Looking West.....	4-13
Figure 4.4-6. Iron Cap Deposit Geology Cross-section Looking Northeast.....	4-15
Figure 4.5-1. Mine Site Plan: End of Operation .....	4-23
Figure 4.5-2. Haul Road Dimensions: Within Pit.....	4-28
Figure 4.5-3. Haul Road Dimensions: External to Pit.....	4-29
Figure 4.5-4. Vertical Cross-section (423100 Easting) of the Mitchell Deposit Showing Lithology, Alteration, and 0.25 g/t Au and 0.1% Cu Grade Shells .....	4-33
Figure 4.5-5. The Relationship between the Extraction Drift (Production Drift), Drawpoints, Drawbells, and Undercut Level .....	4-35
Figure 4.5-6. Plan View of the Proposed Mitchell Block Cave Mine Underground Layout ....	4-37

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 4.5-7. Section of the Mitchell Block Cave Mine Design (Looking South).....	4-38
Figure 4.5-8. Plan View of Proposed Mitchell Block Cave Mine Access .....	4-40
Figure 4.5-9. The Relationship between the Drawbells, Drawpoints (Extraction X-cut), and Extraction Drifts in the Mitchell Block Cave Mine .....	4-41
Figure 4.5-10. Plan View of the Pre-conditioning Level Showing the Footprint of the Level and the Open Pit .....	4-43
Figure 4.5-11. Plan View of the Undercut Level .....	4-44
Figure 4.5-12. Schematic Cross-section Showing the Relationship between the Undercut and the Extraction Levels and Drill Pattern used to Initiate the Cave.....	4-45
Figure 4.5-13. Plan View of the Secondary Breakage Level, Haulage Level, and Extraction Level for the Mitchell Block Cave Mine .....	4-46
Figure 4.5-14. Plan View of the Conveying and Haulage Levels .....	4-48
Figure 4.5-15. Mitchell Block Cave Mine Development Schedule (Lateral, Vertical, and Rehabilitation) .....	4-50
Figure 4.5-16. Material Movement System for Mitchell Block Cave Mine .....	4-51
Figure 4.5-17. Mining Sequence .....	4-53
Figure 4.5-18. Yearly Ore Production Schedule Showing Gold and Copper Grades for the Mitchell Block Cave Mine.....	4-54
Figure 4.5-19. Surface Disturbance.....	4-58
Figure 4.5-20. Diversion Ditches .....	4-60
Figure 4.5-21. Plan and Profile of the Mitchell Block Cave Dewatering Tunnels.....	4-61
Figure 4.5-22. Results of Simulation – Required Storage Volume.....	4-62
Figure 4.5-23. Sulphurets Deposit Open Pit Slope Design .....	4-65
Figure 4.5-24. Kerr Rope Conveyor .....	4-70
Figure 4.5-25. Design of Kerr Waste Rock Storage Facility in the Sulphurets Pit .....	4-72
Figure 4.5-26. Isometric View Showing 0.25 g/t Au and 0.1% Cu Grade Shells of the Iron Cap Deposit (Looking North) .....	4-74
Figure 4.5-27. Vertical Cross-section of the Iron Cap Deposit Showing the 0.25 g/t Au and 0.1% Cu Grade Shells .....	4-75

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 4.5-28. Plan View of the Proposed Iron Cap Block Cave Mine Layout .....	4-78
Figure 4.5-29. Section of the Iron Cap Block Cave Mine Design (Looking East) Showing the Position of Each Main Mine Level .....	4-79
Figure 4.5-30. The Relationship between the Drawbells, Drawpoints (Extraction X-cut), and Extraction Drifts in the Iron Cap Block Cave Mine.....	4-81
Figure 4.5-31. Plan View of the Pre-conditioning Level Showing the Level Footprint.....	4-82
Figure 4.5-32. Plan View of the Undercut Level .....	4-84
Figure 4.5-33. Cross-section Showing the Relationship between the Undercut and Extraction Levels and Drill Pattern Used to Initiate the Cave .....	4-85
Figure 4.5-34. Proposed Conveying Level .....	4-86
Figure 4.5-35. Iron Cap Block Cave Mine Development Schedule (Lateral, Vertical, and Rehabilitation) .....	4-87
Figure 4.5-36. Sequence of Iron Cap Block Cave Mine Drawpoint Excavation.....	4-89
Figure 4.5-37. Yearly Ore Production Schedule Showing Gold and Copper Grades for the Iron Cap Block Cave Mine .....	4-91
Figure 4.5-38. Iron Cap Deposit Showing Ice Cap and Drawpoint Development.....	4-95
Figure 4.5-39. Surface Disturbance Profiles Over the Iron Cap Block Cave Mine Life.....	4-96
Figure 4.5-40. Location of Ventilation Raises that will Direct Iron Cap Inflows to the Mitchell Pit North Wall Dewatering Adit.....	4-98
Figure 4.5-41. Plan View of Early Mitchell Rock Storage Facility Construction Methods ....	4-102
Figure 4.5-42. Overall Slopes for KSM Project Rock Storage Facilities.....	4-103
Figure 4.5-43. Mine Site Ultimate Water Management Plan.....	4-105
Figure 4.5-44. Plan View Showing Waste Rock Transportation Routes to the McTagg Rock Storage Facility.....	4-107
Figure 4.5-45. Ore Stockpile .....	4-110
Figure 4.5-46. Mitchell Ore Preparation Complex Area Plan .....	4-111
Figure 4.5-47. Mitchell Ore Preparation Complex Geohazard Risk Reduction Plan .....	4-115
Figure 4.5-48. KSM Project Mine Site Water Management at Operations .....	4-117

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 4.5-49. Layout and Cross-sections of Both Phases of the Mitchell Diversion Tunnels .....	4-118
Figure 4.5-50. Profile of Mitchell Diversion Tunnels .....	4-119
Figure 4.5-51. Geology of Mine Site Diversion Tunnels.....	4-121
Figure 4.5-52. Mitchell Diversion Sub-glacial Inlets, Looking Upstream.....	4-123
Figure 4.5-53. Typical Cross-section Illustrating the Raise Bored Sub-glacial Inlets.....	4-124
Figure 4.5-54. Outlet Structures for the Open Pit Phase Mitchell Diversion Tunnels .....	4-125
Figure 4.5-55. Outlet Structures for the Underground Phase Mitchell Diversion Tunnels ...	4-126
Figure 4.5-56. Mitchell Diversion Phase 1 Surface Inlets and Infiltration Galleries .....	4-129
Figure 4.5-57. Phasing Plan for McTagg Twinned Diversion Tunnels .....	4-130
Figure 4.5-58. McTagg Diversion Dams - Plan View of Inlet Phases 2 and 3 .....	4-132
Figure 4.5-59. Phase 3 East McTagg Dam Section and Details .....	4-133
Figure 4.5-60. Phase 3 West McTagg Dam Section and Details .....	4-134
Figure 4.5-61. McTagg Diversion Tunnel Phased Outlets and Penstock.....	4-136
Figure 4.5-62. Water Storage Facility Layout .....	4-139
Figure 4.5-63. Water Storage Facility Geological Plan .....	4-140
Figure 4.5-64. Water Storage Facility Geological Cross-section.....	4-141
Figure 4.5-65. Water Storage Facility Dam Details.....	4-144
Figure 4.5-66. Water Storage Facility Dam Pumping Facility.....	4-146
Figure 4.5-67A. Mine Site Water Treatment Plant Layout .....	4-151
Figure 4.5-67B. Conceptual High Density Sludge Water Treatment Process Diagram.....	4-153
Figure 4.5-68A. Selenium Treatment Flow Diagram.....	4-159
Figure 4.5-68B. Typical Selenium Treatment Plant Layout.....	4-160
Figure 4.5-69. Sulphurets-Mitchell Conveyor Tunnel Alignment .....	4-162
Figure 4.5-70. Conceptual Locations of Permanent Avalanche Protection Measures.....	4-164
Figure 4.5-71. Plan View of Mitchell-Treaty Twinned Tunnels Alignment .....	4-166



## Table of Contents

---

Figure 4.5-72. Profile of the Mitchell-Treaty Twinned Tunnels and Details of Portal Sites ..	4–167
Figure 4.5-73. Mitchell-Treaty Twinned Tunnels Geological Map .....	4–169
Figure 4.5-74. Mitchell-Treaty Twinned Tunnels Design Sections .....	4–171
Figure 4.5-75. Plan of Saddle Portal Area Infrastructure .....	4–174
Figure 4.5-76. KSM Project Processing and Tailing Management Area: Location and Main Infrastructure.....	4–177
Figure 4.5-77. Treaty Ore Preparation Complex and Tailing Management Facility: General Arrangement .....	4–179
Figure 4.5-78. Treaty Ore Preparation Complex Layout .....	4–180
Figure 4.5-79. Treaty Process Plant Simplified Flowsheet .....	4–186
Figure 4.5-80. Water Balance – Gold Carbon-in-Leach Circuit and Water Treatment.....	4–191
Figure 4.5-81. Carbon-in-Leach and Copper Management .....	4–193
Figure 4.5-82. Tailing Management Facility Stage 1 - North Cell and Centre Cell .....	4–196
Figure 4.5-83. Tailing Management Facility Stage 2 - Interim South Cell and Centre Cell..	4–197
Figure 4.5-84. Tailing Management Facility Stage 3 - Ultimate Operations South Cell and Centre Cell .....	4–198
Figure 4.5-85. Tailing Management Facility Geological Map .....	4–201
Figure 4.5-86. Tailing Management Facility Surficial Geology .....	4–203
Figure 4.5-87. Tailing Management Facility North Dam Geologic Sections .....	4–204
Figure 4.5-88. Tailing Management Facility Saddle Dam Geologic Sections .....	4–207
Figure 4.5-89. Tailing Management Facility Southeast Dam Geologic Sections .....	4–208
Figure 4.5-90. Tailing Management Facility: North Dam.....	4–211
Figure 4.5-91. Tailing Management Facility: Saddle and Splitter Dams.....	4–212
Figure 4.5-92. Tailing Management Facility: Southeast Dam .....	4–213
Figure 4.5-93. Centre Cell Liner Details – Starter Phase.....	4–215
Figure 4.5-94. Centre Cell Tailing Deposition Scheme .....	4–217
Figure 4.5-95. Schematic Tailing Management Facility Water Cycle .....	4–218

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 4.5-96. Tailing Management Facility Water Management Plan Stage 1 – North Cell and Centre Cell .....	4-219
Figure 4.5-97. Tailing Management Facility Water Management Plan Stage 2 – Interim South Cell and Centre Cell .....	4-220
Figure 4.5-98. Tailing Management Facility Water Management Plan Stage 3 – Ultimate Operations South Cell and Centre Cell .....	4-221
Figure 4.5-99. Tailing Management Facility Water Management Plan Stage 4 – Initial Closure Period.....	4-222
Figure 4.5-100. Tailing Management Facility Water Management Plan Stage 5 – Final Closure .....	4-223
Figure 4.5-101. Tailing Management Facility Discharge Water Line to Treaty Creek.....	4-225
Figure 4.5-102. Coulter Creek Access Road .....	4-229
Figure 4.5-103. Typical Sections for Single Lane Mine Access Road.....	4-231
Figure 4.5-104. Coulter Creek Bridge General Arrangement.....	4-233
Figure 4.5-105. Unuk River Bridge General Arrangement .....	4-235
Figure 4.5-106. Gingras Creek Bridge General Arrangement.....	4-237
Figure 4.5-107. Mitchell Creek Bridge General Arrangement .....	4-239
Figure 4.5-108. Treaty Creek Access Road .....	4-243
Figure 4.5-109. Typical Sections for Double Lane Mine Access Road .....	4-247
Figure 4.5-110. Bell-Irving River Bridge General Arrangement.....	4-249
Figure 4.5-111. Un-named Stream at km 4.7 - Bridge General Arrangement .....	4-251
Figure 4.5-112. North Treaty Creek Bridge General Arrangement.....	4-253
Figure 4.5-113. Un-named Stream at km 20.5 - Bridge General Arrangement .....	4-255
Figure 4.5-114. Un-named Stream at km 29.6 - Open-bottom Engineered Arch General Arrangement.....	4-257
Figure 4.5-115. Temporary Frank Mackie Glacier Access Route Alignment.....	4-262
Figure 4.5-116. Water Storage Dam Granular Soil Borrow Areas and Construction Access Roads .....	4-264

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 4.5-117. Local Rock Quarries and Soil Borrow Areas for Water Storage Dam Construction .....	4-265
Figure 4.5-118. Tailing Management Facility Borrow, Quarry, Soil Storage, Stripping, Waste and Till Stockpile Areas .....	4-267
Figure 4.5-119. KSM Project Mine Site Drill Hole Locations .....	4-269
Figure 4.5-120. KSM Project Processing and Tailing Management Area Drill Hole Locations .....	4-272
Figure 4.8-1. KSM Project Construction and Operation Camps Locations.....	4-280
Figure 4.8-2. Conceptual Layout of the Treaty Operating Camp .....	4-285
Figure 4.8-3. Conceptual Layout of the Mitchell Operating Camp.....	4-286
Figure 4.9-1. KSM Project Transmission Line Alignment.....	4-291
Figure 4.9-2. Conceptual Crossing of the Treaty Creek Transmission Line over the Bell-Irving River .....	4-293
Figure 4.10-1. Proposed KSM Project Development Schedule .....	4-307
Figure 5.1-1. Relationship of Potential, Residual, and Cumulative Effects.....	5-3
Figure 5.4-1. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Scoping: Projects and Activities Considered for the Biophysical Environment Assessment .....	5-25
Figure 5.4-2. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Scoping: Human Activities (Projects) and Areas Considered for the Human Environmental Assessment.....	5-26
Figure 5.4-3. Estimated Present and Future Project Timelines.....	5-34
Figure 5.4-4. Forest Cutblocks Considered in the KSM Project Cumulative Effects Assessment.....	5-61
Figure 5.4-5. Present and Future Project Traffic Routes .....	5-64
Figure 5.4-6. Potential Cumulative One-way Trips per Day as a Result of KSM and Other Projects .....	5-69
Figure 5.4-7. Potential Cumulative One-way Trips per Day .....	5-70
Figure 6.1-1. Atmospheric CO <sub>2</sub> , Measured at Mauna Loa, Hawaii (Keeling Curve) .....	6-4
Figure 6.2-1. BC Land Use Change from Deforestation and Afforestation, 1990-2010.....	6-16
Figure 6.6-1. KSM Project Greenhouse Gas Assessment: Scoping Framework.....	6-20

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 6.7-1. Maximum Extent (All Phases) of KSM Project Footprint and Resulting BEC/TEM Vegetation Area Loss.....	6-33
Figure 6.7-2. The GHG Mitigation Hierarchy .....	6-37
Figure 7.1-1. KSM Project Air Dispersion Model Regional Study Area Domain .....	7-7
Figure 7.1-2. Baseline Monitoring Stations for Meteorology, Snow, Precipitation, and Evaporation .....	7-9
Figure 7.1-3. Windroses and Frequency Distributions for Project Station .....	7-15
Figure 7.8-1. Treaty Ore Preparation Complex Layout.....	7-45
Figure 7.8-2. KSM Air Dispersion Modelling Domain and Receptor Spacing.....	7-47
Figure 7.8-3. KSM Project Construction Phase Air Emission Sources (Year -1).....	7-51
Figure 7.8-4. KSM Project Operation Phase Air Emission Sources (Year 4) .....	7-53
Figure 7.8-5. Maximum 1-hour SO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Construction .....	7-55
Figure 7.8-6. Maximum 24-hour Average SO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Construction .....	7-56
Figure 7.8-7. Annual SO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Construction.....	7-57
Figure 7.8-8. Maximum 1-hour NO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Construction .....	7-58
Figure 7.8-9. Maximum 24-hour NO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Construction .....	7-60
Figure 7.8-10. Annual NO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Construction.....	7-61
Figure 7.8-11. Maximum 1-hour CO Concentration during Construction .....	7-62
Figure 7.8-12. Maximum 8-hour CO Concentration during Construction .....	7-63
Figure 7.8-13. Maximum 24-hour Total TSP Concentration during Construction .....	7-68
Figure 7.8-14. Annual Total TSP Concentration during Construction .....	7-69
Figure 7.8-15. Maximum 24-hour Total PM <sub>10</sub> Concentration during Construction .....	7-70
Figure 7.8-16. Maximum 24-hour Total PM <sub>2.5</sub> Concentration during Construction .....	7-71
Figure 7.8-17. Annual Total PM <sub>2.5</sub> Concentration during Construction .....	7-73
Figure 7.8-18. Maximum 30-day Dust Deposition during Construction .....	7-74
Figure 7.8-19. Annual Acid Deposition during Construction.....	7-75

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 7.8-20. Maximum 1-hour SO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Operation.....	7-79
Figure 7.8-21. Maximum 24-hour SO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Operation.....	7-80
Figure 7.8-22. Annual Average SO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Operation .....	7-81
Figure 7.8-23. Maximum 1-hour NO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Operation .....	7-82
Figure 7.8-24. Maximum 24-hour NO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Operation .....	7-83
Figure 7.8-25. Annual Average NO <sub>2</sub> Concentration during Operation.....	7-84
Figure 7.8-26. Maximum 1-hour CO Concentration during Operation.....	7-85
Figure 7.8-27. Maximum 8-hour CO Concentration during Operation.....	7-87
Figure 7.8-28. Maximum 24-hour Total TSP Concentration during Operation .....	7-89
Figure 7.8-29. Annual Total TSP Concentration during Operation.....	7-90
Figure 7.8-30. Maximum 24-hour Total PM <sub>10</sub> Concentration during Operation .....	7-91
Figure 7.8-31. Maximum 24-hour Total PM <sub>2.5</sub> Concentration during Operation.....	7-95
Figure 7.8-32. Annual Total PM <sub>2.5</sub> Concentration during Operation .....	7-96
Figure 7.8-33. Maximum 30-day Dust Deposition during Operation .....	7-97
Figure 7.8-34. Annual Acid Deposition during Operation.....	7-98
Figure 7.10-1. KSM Project Air Quality Cumulative Effects Scoping: Projects and Activities with Potential Spatial Interaction.....	7-104
Figure 7.10-2. Estimated Timeline for Present and Future Projects with Potential Cumulative Effects for Air Quality .....	7-107
Figure 8.1-1. Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils Local Study Area .....	8-3
Figure 8.1-2. Distribution of Surficial Materials in the Baseline Study Area.....	8-7
Figure 8.4-1. Environmental Local Study Area Boundaries for Terrain and Soils.....	8-19
Figure 8.9-1. Spatial Distribution of Human Activities in KSM Project Area .....	8-67
Figure 9.1-1. The KSM Project.....	9-2
Figure 9.1-2. Local Study Area for Geohazards Assessment .....	9-5
Figure 9.3-1. Land and Resource Management Planning Boundaries.....	9-16

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 9.4-1. Mine Site Project Area Infrastructure — Construction .....	9-18
Figure 9.4-2. Mine Site Project Area Infrastructure — Operation.....	9-19
Figure 9.4-3. Processing and Tailing Management Area Infrastructure and Treaty Creek Access Road — Construction.....	9-20
Figure 9.4-4. Processing and Tailing Management Area Infrastructure and Treaty Creek Access Road — Operation .....	9-21
Figure 9.4-5. Coulter Creek Access Road — Construction.....	9-23
Figure 9.4-6. Coulter Creek Access Road — Operation .....	9-24
Figure 9.5-1. Terrain Stability Class IV and V Terrain Polygons Associated with Mine Site Infrastructure .....	9-26
Figure 9.5-2. Terrain Stability Class IV and V Terrain Polygons Associated with the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	9-27
Figure 9.5-3. Terrain Stability Class IV and V Terrain Polygons Associated with the Coulter Creek Access Road .....	9-28
Figure 9.6-1. Mine Site TSC IV Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Construction.....	9-33
Figure 9.6-2. Coulter Creek Access Road TSC IV Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Construction .....	9-34
Figure 9.6-3. Treaty Creek Access Road and Processing and Tailing Management Area TSC IV Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Construction.....	9-35
Figure 9.6-4. Mine Site TSC V Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Construction.....	9-37
Figure 9.6-5. Coulter Creek Access Road TSC V Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Construction .....	9-39
Figure 9.6-6. Treaty Creek Access Road and Processing and Tailing Management Area TSC V Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Construction.....	9-41
Figure 9.6-7. Mine Site TSC IV Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Operation .....	9-43
Figure 9.6-8. Coulter Creek Access Road TSC IV Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Operation .....	9-44
Figure 9.6-9. Treaty Creek Access Road and Processing and Tailing Management Area TSC IV Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Operation .....	9-45
Figure 9.6-10. Mine Site TSC V Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Operation .....	9-46

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 9.6-11. Coulter Creek Access Road TSC V Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Operation .....	9-47
Figure 9.6-12. Treaty Creek Access Road and Processing and Tailing Management Area TSC V Terrain Affected by Infrastructure — Operation.....	9-48
Figure 9.8-1. Terrain Stability Polygons Requiring Follow-up Monitoring.....	9-63
Figure 10-1. ML/ARD Linkages for Effects Assessment .....	10-2
Figure 10.1-1. Geochemistry Sample Locations: Coulter Creek Access Road .....	10-7
Figure 10.1-2. Locations of Geochemistry Samples in Relation to Mine Site Infrastructure .....	10-9
Figure 10.1-3. Geochemistry Sample Locations: Processing and Tailing Management Area and Treaty Creek Access Road .....	10-11
Figure 10.1-4. Total Carbon Neutralization Potential versus Sobek Neutralization Potential by Deposit, Model Code, and Ore/Waste Designation .....	10-16
Figure 10.1-5. ML/ARD Potential – Coulter Creek Access Road .....	10-39
Figure 10.1-6. ML/ARD Potential – Treaty Creek Access Road .....	10-41
Figure 10.2-1. Decrease in Oxidation Rate Predicted by the Arrhenius Equation for Activation Energies of 50 and 60 kJ/mol .....	10-45
Figure 10.2-2. Cross Section of Pit and Block Cave Indicating the Surface Areas for Model Inputs.....	10-56
Figure 11.1-1. Groundwater Quantity Monitoring Locations in the Mine Site .....	11-4
Figure 11.1-2. Groundwater Quantity Monitoring Locations in the Processing and Tailing Management Area.....	11-5
Figure 11.1-3. Geological Interpretation of the Water Storage Facility Site.....	11-9
Figure 11.1-4. Potentiometric Surface in the Mine Site.....	11-11
Figure 11.1-5. Plan View of Faults around the Tailing Management Facility.....	11-13
Figure 11.1-6. Potentiometric Surface in the Processing and Tailing Management Area....	11-17
Figure 11.3-1. Cassiar Iskut-Stikine Land and Resource Management Plan and the Nass South Sustainable Resource Management Plan Boundaries in Relation to the KSM Project.....	11-19
Figure 11.4-1. Regional Study Area Defined for the Groundwater Quantity Effects Assessment.....	11-21

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 11.4-2. Mine Site Local Study Area Defined for the Groundwater Quantity Effects Assessment.....	11-22
Figure 11.4-3. Processing and Tailing Management Area Local Study Area Defined for the Groundwater Quantity Effects Assessment .....	11-23
Figure 11.7-1. Baseline Groundwater Levels and Flow Directions in the Mine Site .....	11-35
Figure 11.7-2. Predicted Groundwater Levels in the Mine Site (Base Case) .....	11-37
Figure 11.7-3. Predicted Flow Path Lines in the Mine Site at End of Operation (Base Case) .....	11-39
Figure 11.7-4. Predicted Flow Path Lines in the Mine Site Post-closure (Base Case) .....	11-41
Figure 11.7-5. End of Operation Flow Path Lines in the Mine Site for Worst Case Scenarios .....	11-43
Figure 11.7-6. Post-closure Flow Path Lines in the Mine Site for Worst Case Scenarios ...	11-45
Figure 11.7-7. Baseline Water Levels and Flow Directions in the Processing and Tailing Management Area.....	11-49
Figure 11.7-8. Predicted Water Levels in the Processing and Tailing Management Area at Operation and Post-closure (Base Case).....	11-51
Figure 11.7-9. Predicted Flow Paths Leaving the Tailing Management Facility at Operation and Post-closure (Base Case) .....	11-53
Figure 11.7-10. Flow Paths Leaving the Tailing Management Facility for Worst Case Scenarios (Post-closure) .....	11-55
Figure 11.9-1. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Groundwater Quantity .....	11-68
Figure 12.1-1. Groundwater Quality Monitoring Locations in the Mine Site .....	12-3
Figure 12.1-2. Groundwater Quality Monitoring Locations in the Processing and Tailing Management Area.....	12-4
Figure 12.1-3. Piper Plot of Major Ion Chemistry in the Mine Site and Processing and Tailing Management Area.....	12-11
Figure 12.3-1. Cassiar Iskut-Stikine Land and Resource Management Plan and the Nass South Sustainable Resource Management Plan Boundaries in Relation to the KSM Project.....	12-18
Figure 12.4-1. Regional Study Area Defined for the Groundwater Quality Effects Assessment.....	12-20



## Table of Contents

---

Figure 12.4-2. Mine Site Local Study Area Defined for the Groundwater Quality Effects Assessment.....	12-21
Figure 12.4-3. Processing and Tailing Management Area Local Study Area Defined for the Groundwater Quality Effects Assessment.....	12-22
Figure 12.7-1. Schematic Plan of the Water Storage Facility.....	12-37
Figure 12.7-2. Schematic Cross-sections of the Water Storage Facility Dams .....	12-39
Figure 12.7-3. Schematic Plan of Mitchell Pit and Block Cave Mine Post-operation Drainage System.....	12-43
Figure 12.7-4. Schematic Plan and Cross-section of Sulphurets Pit Waste Rock Storage Facility Drainage System.....	12-45
Figure 12.7-5. Predicted Flow Path Lines in the Mine Site at End of Operation (Base Case) .....	12-49
Figure 12.7-6. Predicted Flow Path Lines in the Mine Site Post-closure (Base Case) .....	12-51
Figure 12.7-7. Predicted Plumes Sourced at Project Components in the Mine Site at End of Operation and 200 Years Post-closure (Model Layer 1: Shallow Groundwater Environment).....	12-53
Figure 12.7-8. Predicted Plumes Sourced in Project Components in the Mine Site at 200 Years Post-closure (Model Layers 2 - 7: Deep Groundwater Environment) .....	12-55
Figure 12.7-9. Plumes Sourced in the Mine Site for Worst Case Scenario Simulations at 200 Years Post-closure (Model Layer 1: Shallow Groundwater Environment) .....	12-57
Figure 12.7-10. Relative Concentration Breakthrough Curves in Long-term Monitoring Wells in the Mine Site and Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	12-61
Figure 12.7-11. Plume Sourced in the Water Storage Facility for the Upper Case Scenario 200 Years Post-closure .....	12-63
Figure 12.7-12. Predicted Plumes Emanating from the Tailing Management Facility at Operation Year 25 .....	12-66
Figure 12.7-13. Predicted Plumes Emanating from the Tailing Management Facility at Operation Year 51.5 (End of Operation) .....	12-67
Figure 12.7-14. Predicted Plumes Emanating from the Tailing Management Facility 200 Years after End of Operation .....	12-68
Figure 12.7-15. Worst-case Scenario Solute Transport Results 200 Years after End of Operation (Model Layer 1: Shallow Groundwater Environment) .....	12-69

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 12.9-1. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Groundwater Quality .....	12–91
Figure 13.1-1. Surface Water Quantity Hydrometric Station Locations 2007 to 2011, KSM Project .....	13–3
Figure 13.1-2. Glacier Monitoring Program Study Area, KSM Project .....	13–5
Figure 13.4-1. Spatial Boundaries of the Surface Water Quantity Effects Assessment and Assessment Points within the Local Study Area and Regional Study Area .....	13–21
Figure 13.4-2. Assessment Points within the Surface Water Quantity Local Study Area ....	13–23
Figure 13.4-3. Subcatchments of PTMA during Years 0 to 24 of Operation .....	13–29
Figure 13.4-4. Subcatchments of PTMA during Years 25 to 30 of Operation .....	13–30
Figure 13.4-5. Subcatchments of PTMA during Years 30 to 45 of Operation .....	13–31
Figure 13.4-6. Subcatchments of PTMA during Years 45 to 51 of Operation .....	13–32
Figure 13.4-7. Subcatchments of PTMA during Years 51 to 56 of Operation .....	13–33
Figure 13.4-8. Subcatchments of PTMA after 57 Years of Operation .....	13–34
Figure 13.4-9. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area during Years 0 to 10 of Operation .....	13–35
Figure 13.4-10. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area during Years 10 to 25 of Operation .....	13–36
Figure 13.4-11. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area during Years 26 to 30 of Operation .....	13–37
Figure 13.4-12. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area during Years 30 to 51 of Operation .....	13–38
Figure 13.4-13. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area during Years 51 to 56 of Operation .....	13–39
Figure 13.4-14. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area after 57 Years of Operation.....	13–40
Figure 13.7-1. Annual Flow Volumes in Processing and Tailing Management Area Watersheds for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .	13–52
Figure 13.7-2. Range of Annual Flow Volumes at North Treaty Creek for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13–57
Figure 13.7-3. Range of Annual Flow Volumes at South Tiegen Creek for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13–58
Figure 13.7-4. Annual Flow Volumes in Mine Site Watersheds for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13–59

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 13.7-5. Range of Annual Flow Volumes at Mitchell Creek for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-62
Figure 13.7-6. Range of Annual Flow Volumes at Gingras Creek for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-63
Figure 13.7-7. Range of Annual Flow Volumes at Sulphurets Creek for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-64
Figure 13.7-8. Annual Flow Volumes in the Bell-Irving River Sites for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-65
Figure 13.7-9. Annual Flow Volumes in the Unuk River Sites for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-68
Figure 13.7-10. Monthly Distribution of Annual Flow in Processing and Tailing Management Area Watersheds for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-70
Figure 13.7-11. Monthly Distribution of Annual Flow in Mine Site Watersheds for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-76
Figure 13.7-12. Monthly Distribution of Annual Flow in Bell-Irving River Sites for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-80
Figure 13.7-13. Monthly Distribution of Annual Flow at Unuk River Sites for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-82
Figure 13.7-14. Estimated Changes in Peak Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions in Processing and Tailing Management Area Watersheds during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-86
Figure 13.7-15. Estimated Changes in Peak Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions in Mine Site Watersheds during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-92
Figure 13.7-16. Estimated Changes in Peak Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions at Bell-Irving River Sites during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-96
Figure 13.7-17. Estimated Changes in Peak Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions at Unuk River Sites during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-98
Figure 13.7-18. Estimated Changes in Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions in Processing and Tailing Management Area Watersheds during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-102
Figure 13.7-19. Estimated Changes in June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions in Processing and Tailing Management Area Watersheds during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-108

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 13.7-20. Estimated Changes in Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions in Mine Site Watersheds during Different Phases of the Project .....	13–112
Figure 13.7-21. Estimated Changes in June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions in Mine Site Watersheds during Different Phases of the Project .....	13–116
Figure 13.7-22. Estimated Changes in Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions at Bell-Irving River during Different Phases of the Project .....	13–120
Figure 13.7-23. Estimated Changes in June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions at Bell-Irving River Sites during Different Phases of the Project .....	13–121
Figure 13.7-24. Estimated Changes in Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions at Unuk River Sites during Different Phases of the Project .....	13–124
Figure 13.7-25. Estimated Changes in June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values Compared with Baseline Conditions at Unuk River Sites during Different Phases of the Project .....	13–125
Figure 13.9-1. KSM Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Surface Water Quantity .....	13–155
Figure 14.1-1. Water Quality Sampling Locations 2007-2012, KSM Project .....	14–3
Figure 14.7-1. Surface Water and Groundwater Quality Baseline Locations Used for Surface Water Quality Modelling .....	14–41
Figure 14.7-2. Mine Site Water Quality Model Schematic .....	14–44
Figure 14.7-3. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Water Storage Facility (Year -1) .....	14–50
Figure 14.7-4. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Water Storage Facility (Year 5).....	14–51
Figure 14.7-5. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Water Storage Facility (Year 25).....	14–52
Figure 14.7-6. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Water Storage Facility (Year 51.5).....	14–53
Figure 14.7-7. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Water Storage Facility (Year 65).....	14–54
Figure 14.7-8. Processing and Tailing Management Area Water Quality Model Schematic .....	14–73

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 14.7-9. Water Quality Predictions for Base Case Water Balance: North Cell TMF (Year 5) .....	14-76
Figure 14.7-10. Water Quality Predictions for Base Case Water Balance: North Cell TMF (Year 25) .....	14-77
Figure 14.7-11. Water Quality Predictions for Base Case Water Balance: North Cell TMF (Year 51.5) .....	14-78
Figure 14.7-12. Water Quality Predictions for Base Case Water Balance: North Cell TMF (Year 65) .....	14-79
Figure 14.7-13. Water Quality Predictions for Base Case Water Balance: South Cell TMF (Year 25).....	14-80
Figure 14.7-14. Water Quality Predictions for Base Case Water Balance: South Cell TMF (Year 51.5).....	14-81
Figure 14.7-15. Water Quality Predictions for Base Case Water Balance: South Cell TMF (Year 65).....	14-82
Figure 14.7-16. Sulphurets Pit Backfill with Kerr Waste Rock.....	14-111
Figure 14.7-17. Water Management on Kerr Waste Rock .....	14-112
Figure 14.7-18. Selenium Treatment Plant Flow Diagram .....	14-114
Figure 14.7-19. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Sulphurets Creek – Site SC3 (Year 5) .....	14-151
Figure 14.7-20. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Sulphurets Creek – Site SC3 (Year 25) .....	14-152
Figure 14.7-21. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Sulphurets Creek – Site SC3 (Year 51.5) .....	14-153
Figure 14.7-22. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Sulphurets Creek – Site SC3 (Year 65) .....	14-154
Figure 14.7-23. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Unuk River – Site UR1 (Year 5).....	14-155
Figure 14.7-24. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Unuk River – Site UR1 (Year 25).....	14-156
Figure 14.7-25. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Unuk River – Site UR1 (Year 51.5).....	14-157
Figure 14.7-26. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Unuk River – Site UR1 (Year 65).....	14-158

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 14.7-27. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Unuk River – Site UR2 (Year 5).....	14–188
Figure 14.7-28. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Unuk River – Site UR2 (Year 25).....	14–189
Figure 14.7-29. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Unuk River – Site UR2 (Year 51.5).....	14–190
Figure 14.7-30. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Unuk River – Site UR2 (Year 65).....	14–191
Figure 14.7-31. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: North Treaty Creek – Site NTR2 (Year 5).....	14–220
Figure 14.7-32. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: North Treaty Creek – Site NTR2 (Year 25).....	14–221
Figure 14.7-33. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: North Treaty Creek – Site NTR2 (Year 51.5).....	14–222
Figure 14.7-34. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: North Treaty Creek – Site NTR2 (Year 65).....	14–223
Figure 14.7-35. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Treaty Creek – Site TRC2 (Year 5).....	14–224
Figure 14.7-36. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Treaty Creek – Site TRC2 (Year 25).....	14–225
Figure 14.7-37. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Treaty Creek – Site TRC2 (Year 51.5).....	14–226
Figure 14.7-38. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Treaty Creek – Site TRC2 (Year 65).....	14–227
Figure 14.7-39. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: South Teigen Creek – Site STE3 (Year 5).....	14–228
Figure 14.7-40. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: South Teigen Creek – Site STE3 (Year 25).....	14–229
Figure 14.7-41. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: South Teigen Creek – Site STE3 (Year 51.5).....	14–230
Figure 14.7-42. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: South Teigen Creek – Site STE3 (Year 65).....	14–231
Figure 14.7-43. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Teigen Creek – Site TEC2 (Year 5).....	14–257

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 14.7-44. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Teigen Creek – Site TEC2 (Year 25) .....	14–258
Figure 14.7-45. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Teigen Creek – Site TEC2 (Year 51.5) .....	14–259
Figure 14.7-46. Water Quality Predictions for the Base Case Water Balance: Teigen Creek – Site TEC2 (Year 65) .....	14–260
Figure 14.9-1. KSM Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Surface Water Quality .....	14–271
Figure 15.1-1. KSM Fish and Aquatic Habitat Baseline Study Area (2008 to 2012).....	15–3
Figure 15.1-2. Stream Reaches within the Baseline Fish and Aquatic Habitat Study Area ...	15–5
Figure 15.1-3a. Baseline Fish and Fish Habitat Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012.....	15–21
Figure 15.1-3b. Baseline Fish and Fish Habitat Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012.....	15–23
Figure 15.1-3c. Baseline Fish and Fish Habitat Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012.....	15–25
Figure 15.1-3d. Baseline Fish and Fish Habitat Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012.....	15–27
Figure 15.1-3e. Baseline Fish and Fish Habitat Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012.....	15–29
Figure 15.1-3f. Baseline Fish and Fish Habitat Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012.....	15–31
Figure 15.1-3g. Baseline Fish and Fish Habitat Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012.....	15–33
Figure 15.1-3h. Baseline Fish and Fish Habitat Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012.....	15–35
Figure 15.1-3i. Baseline Fish and Fish Habitat Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012.....	15–37
Figure 15.1-3j. Baseline Fish and Fish Habitat Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012.....	15–39
Figure 15.1-4. Location of Chinook Salmon Redds within Teigen Creek, 2010 .....	15–47
Figure 15.1-5. Location of Unuk River Chinook Salmon Spawning Tributaries .....	15–49
Figure 15.1-6. Location of Treaty Access Road Fish-bearing Watercourse Crossings .....	15–54
Figure 15.1-7. Location of Coulter Creek Access Road Fish-bearing Watercourse Crossings .....	15–55
Figure 15.1-8. Aquatic Biology and Sediment Sampling Sites, 2008 to 2012, KSM Project .....	15–65
Figure 15.4-1. KSM Fish and Aquatic Habitat Local and Regional Study Areas .....	15–87

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 15.7-1. Dolly Varden Health Suitability Indices for Depth and Velocity Preferences.....	15–190
Figure 15.7-2. Average Monthly Discharges in North Treaty Creek (STWM-H1 and STWM-H2) for Baseline and Tailing Management Facility Developed Conditions .	15–193
Figure 15.7-3. Average Monthly Discharges in South Teigen Creek (NTWM-H1 and NTWM-H2) for Baseline and Tailing Management Facility Developed Conditions .	15–194
Figure 15.7-4. Baseline and Tailing Management Facility Developed Flows for Mean of all Transects on the North Treaty and South Teigen Creeks.....	15–195
Figure 15.7-5. Estimated Dolly Varden Habitat Impact Variability on Weighted Useable Area in North Treaty Creek in August and October (Years 0-24, 25-30, and 45-50).....	15–201
Figure 15.7-6. Estimated Dolly Varden Habitat Impact Variability on Weighted Useable Area in North Treaty Creek in August and October (Years 30-45 and 51-56) .....	15–202
Figure 15.7-7. Estimated Dolly Varden Habitat Impact Variability on Weighted Useable Area in North Treaty Creek in August and October (Year >56).....	15–203
Figure 15.7-8. Estimated Dolly Varden Habitat Impact Variability on Weighted Useable Area in South Teigen Creek in August and October (Years 0-45 and 46-56).....	15–204
Figure 15.7-9. Estimated Dolly Varden Habitat Impact Variability on Weighted Useable Area in South Teigen Creek in August and October (Years >56).....	15–205
Figure 15.7-10. Weekly Mean Temperatures for South Teigen Creek from August 2009 to August 2010 .....	15–217
Figure 15.7-11. Weekly Mean Temperatures for North Treaty Creek from August 2009 to August 2010 .....	15–218
Figure 15.7-12. Non-fish-bearing Aquatic Habitat Loss in the KSM Project Mine Site .....	15–227
Figure 15.9-1. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Fish and Aquatic Habitat .....	15–295
Figure 16.1-1. KSM Wetland Local Baseline Study Area and Mapped Wetland Sites .....	16–3
Figure 16.1-2. Wetland UR1 Location .....	16–7
Figure 16.1-3. Wetlands STE1 and NTR1 Locations .....	16–8
Figure 16.1-4a. Wetland Distribution in the KSM Wetland Local Baseline Study Area – Mine Site, Map 1 .....	16–13
Figure 16.1-4b. Wetland Distribution in the KSM Wetland Local Baseline Study Area – Mine Site, Map 2 .....	16–15



## Table of Contents

---

Figure 16.1-4c. Wetland Distribution in the KSM Wetland Local Baseline Study Area – Mine Site, Map 3 .....	16–17
Figure 16.1-4d. Wetland Distribution in the KSM Wetland Local Baseline Study Area – Mine Site, Map 4 .....	16–19
Figure 16.1-5a. Wetland Distribution in the KSM Wetland Local Baseline Study Area – PTMA Site, Map 1 .....	16–21
Figure 16.1-5b. Wetland Distribution in the KSM Wetland Local Baseline Study Area – PTMA Site, Map 2 .....	16–23
Figure 16.3-1. Cassiar Iskut-Stikine Land and Resource Management Plan and the Nass South Sustainable Resource Management Plan Boundaries in relation to the KSM Project.....	16–35
Figure 16.4-1. KSM Project Local Study Area and Regional Study Area .....	16–37
Figure 16.7-1. Progression of Wetland Avoidance 2010 to 2012: Plant Site Area .....	16–48
Figure 16.7-2. Preferred Wetland Compensation Sites .....	16–50
Figure 16.7-3. Reserve and Management Zones for Wetlands in the Treaty OPC .....	16–58
Figure 16.9-1. KSM Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Wetlands .....	16–70
Figure 17.1-1. Terrestrial Ecosystem Assessment Boundaries .....	17–2
Figure 17.1-2. Biogeoclimatic Ecosystem Classification (BEC) Units in the Local and Regional Study Areas.....	17–4
Figure 17.1-3. Rare Plant Species within or near the Regional Study Area .....	17–9
Figure 17.1-4. Protected Areas within or near the Regional Study Area .....	17–14
Figure 17.1-5. Old Growth Management Areas within or near the Regional Study Area.....	17–15
Figure 17.3-1. Forest Districts and Timber Supply Areas (TSA) .....	17–17
Figure 17.3-2. Land and Resource Management Planning Boundaries.....	17–18
Figure 17.7-1. Watershed Boundaries for Terrestrial Ecosystems Effects Assessment.....	17–34
Figure 17.7-2a. Footprint at the End of Operation: Mine Site and Coulter Creek Access Road .....	17–37
Figure 17.7-2b. Footprint at the End of Operation: Processing and Tailing Management Area and Treaty Creek Access Road .....	17–39

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 17.7-3a. Footprint at the End of Closure: Mine Site and Coulter Creek Access Road .....	17-41
Figure 17.7-3b. Footprint at the End of Closure: Processing and Tailing Management Area and Treaty Creek Access Road .....	17-43
Figure 17.7-4a. Loss and Degradation – Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat: PTMA and Treaty Creek Access Road.....	17-45
Figure 17.7-4b. Loss and Degradation – Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat: Mine Site and Coulter Creek Access Road.....	17-47
Figure 17.7-5a. Loss and Degradation – Avalanche Track Ecosystems: PTMA and Treaty Creek Access Road.....	17-57
Figure 17.7-5b. Loss and Degradation – Avalanche Track Ecosystems: Mine Site and Coulter Creek Access Road .....	17-59
Figure 17.7-6a. Loss and Degradation – Listed Ecosystems: PTMA and Treaty Creek Access Road .....	17-61
Figure 17.7-6b. Loss and Degradation – Listed Ecosystems: Mine Site and Coulter Creek Access Road .....	17-63
Figure 17.7-7a. Loss and Degradation – Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems: PTMA and Treaty Creek Access Road.....	17-67
Figure 17.7-7b. Loss and Degradation – Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems: Mine Site and Coulter Creek Access Road.....	17-69
Figure 17.7-8a. Loss and Degradation – Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems: PTMA and Treaty Creek Access Road.....	17-73
Figure 17.7-8b. Loss and Degradation – Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems: Mine Site and Coulter Creek Access Road .....	17-75
Figure 17.7-9a. Loss and Degradation – Old Forest Ecosystems (TEM): PTMA and Treaty Creek Access Road.....	17-77
Figure 17.7-9b. Loss and Degradation – Old Forest Ecosystems (TEM): Mine Site and Coulter Creek Access Road .....	17-79
Figure 17.7-10a. Loss and Degradation – Other Terrestrial Ecosystems: PTMA and Treaty Creek Access Road.....	17-83
Figure 17.7-10b. Loss and Degradation – Other Terrestrial Ecosystems: Mine Site and Coulter Creek Access Road .....	17-85
Figure 17.9-1. KSM Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17-129

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 18.1-1. Moose Observed during Baseline Surveys and High Quality Winter Habitat.....	18–7
Figure 18.1-2. Mountain Goats Observed during Winter Baseline Surveys (2009 and 2011) and High Quality Winter Habitat.....	18–10
Figure 18.1-3. Mountain Goats Observed during Summer Baseline Surveys (2008 and 2010) and High Quality Summer Habitat .....	18–11
Figure 18.1-4. High Quality Grizzly Bear Habitat .....	18–15
Figure 18.1-5. High Quality Black Bear Habitat .....	18–17
Figure 18.1-6. High Quality American Marten Winter Habitat .....	18–20
Figure 18.1-7. Hoary Marmot Colonies Observed during Baseline Surveys (2008 and 2009) and High Quality Habitat.....	18–22
Figure 18.1-8. Raptors Observed during Baseline Surveys, 2008 and 2009 .....	18–25
Figure 18.1-9. Wetland Birds Observed during Breeding Surveys, July 2008.....	18–29
Figure 18.1-10. Forest and Alpine Bird Survey Transects, June 2008 and 2009 .....	18–31
Figure 18.1-11. Aerial Survey Locations and Evaluation of Potential Western Toad Breeding Ponds, 2008 .....	18–33
Figure 18.1-12. Amphibian Observations during Ground Surveys, 2008, 2009, and 2011..	18–35
Figure 18.4-1. Wildlife Regional and Local Study Areas.....	18–50
Figure 18.7-1a. Moose Winter Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project .....	18–81
Figure 18.7-1b. Moose Winter Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project .....	18–83
Figure 18.7-2a. Mountain Goat Winter Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–87
Figure 18.7-2b. Mountain Goat Winter Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–89
Figure 18.7-3a. Mountain Goat UWR Lost or Altered due to the Project .....	18–91
Figure 18.7-3b. Mountain Goat UWR Lost or Altered due to the Project .....	18–93
Figure 18.7-4a. Grizzly Bear Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–97
Figure 18.7-4b. Grizzly Bear Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–99
Figure 18.7-5a. Black Bear Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–103
Figure 18.7-5b. Black Bear Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–105

## **Table of Contents**

---

Figure 18.7-6a. American Marten Winter Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–109
Figure 18.7-6b. American Marten Winter Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–111
Figure 18.7-7a. Hoary Marmot Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–115
Figure 18.7-7b. Hoary Marmot Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–117
Figure 18.7-8a. Raptor Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project .....	18–121
Figure 18.7-8b. Raptor Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project .....	18–123
Figure 18.7-9a. Wetland Bird Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–127
Figure 18.7-9b. Wetland Bird Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–129
Figure 18.7-10a. Cavity-nesting Wetland Bird Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project .	18–131
Figure 18.7-10b. Cavity-nesting Wetland Bird Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project .	18–133
Figure 18.7-11a. Riverine Bird Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–135
Figure 18.7-11b. Riverine Bird Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–137
Figure 18.7-12a. Western Toad Wetland Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–141
Figure 18.7-12b. Western Toad Wetland Habitat Lost or Altered due to the Project.....	18–143
Figure 18.7-13a. Functional Loss of Habitat for Moose due to Noise – Construction.....	18–165
Figure 18.7-13b. Functional Loss of Habitat for Moose due to Noise – Operation .....	18–167
Figure 18.7-14a. Functional Loss of Habitat for Mountain Goats due to Noise – Construction .....	18–169
Figure 18.7-14b. Functional Loss of Habitat for Mountain Goats due to Noise – Operation .....	18–171
Figure 18.7-15. Functional Loss of Habitat for Mountain Goats due to Helicopter Noise – Construction .....	18–175
Figure 18.7-16a. Functional Loss of Habitat for Grizzly Bears due to Noise – Construction .....	18–179
Figure 18.7-16b. Functional Loss of Habitat for Grizzly Bears due to Noise – Operation..	18–181
Figure 18.7-17a. Functional Loss of Denning Habitat for Black Bears due to Noise – Construction .....	18–183

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 18.7-17b. Functional Loss of Denning Habitat for Black Bears due to Noise – Operation .....	18–185
Figure 18.7-18a. Functional Loss of Habitat for Raptors due to Noise – Construction .....	18–189
Figure 18.7-18b. Functional Loss of Habitat for Raptors due to Noise – Operation .....	18–191
Figure 18.7-19a. Functional Loss of Habitat for Wetland Birds due to Noise – Construction .....	18–193
Figure 18.7-19b. Functional Loss of Habitat for Wetland Birds due to Noise – Operation.	18–195
Figure 18.7-20a. Functional Loss of Habitat for Cavity Nesting Wetland Birds due to Noise – Construction .....	18–197
Figure 18.7-20b. Functional Loss of Habitat for Cavity Nesting Wetland Birds due to Noise – Operation .....	18–199
Figure 18.7-21a. Functional Loss of Habitat for Riverine Birds due to Noise – Construction .....	18–201
Figure 18.7-21b. Functional Loss of Habitat for Riverine Birds due to Noise – Operation.	18–203
Figure 18.7-22. Mountain Goat Habitat Potentially Exposed to Fugitive Dust.....	18–253
Figure 18.9-1. Moose CEA Area and Movement Area.....	18–295
Figure 18.9-2. Mountain Goat CEA Area and Movement Area .....	18–296
Figure 18.9-3. Grizzly Bear and Black Bear CEA Area and Movement Area .....	18–297
Figure 18.9-4. American Marten CEA Area .....	18–298
Figure 18.9-5. Western Toad CEA Area.....	18–299
Figure 18.9-6. CEA Area for Hoary Marmots, Birds, and Bats.....	18–300
Figure 18.9-7. Summary of Projected Traffic Rates (vehicles per hour) by Road and Sections Predicted to Impede Grizzly Bear Movement .....	18–347
Figure 19.4-1. KSM Site Spatial Boundary of Study Area.....	19–4
Figure 19.8-1. Predicted Nighttime Noise Levels during Year -1 (Construction) .....	19–21
Figure 19.8-2. Predicted Nighttime Noise Levels during Year 4 (Operation).....	19–22
Figure 19.8-3. Predicted Daytime Noise Levels during Year -1 (Construction) .....	19–23
Figure 19.8-4. Predicted Daytime Noise Levels during Year 4 (Operation).....	19–24

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 19.8-5. Predicted $L_{dn}$ during Year -1 (Construction).....	19–25
Figure 19.8-6. Predicted $L_{dn}$ during Year 4 (Operation) .....	19–26
Figure 19.8-7. Predicted Adjusted $L_{dn}$ during Year -1 (Construction).....	19–28
Figure 19.8-8. Predicted Adjusted $L_{dn}$ during Year 4 (Operation).....	19–29
Figure 19.8-9. Predicted Blasting $L_{peak}$ during Year -1 (Construction).....	19–30
Figure 19.8-10. Predicted Blasting $L_{peak}$ during Year 4 (Operation) .....	19–31
Figure 19.8-11. Predicted Helicopter $L_{AE}$ .....	19–32
Figure 19.9-1. KSM Cumulative Effects Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Noise.....	19–36
Figure 20.1-1. Social and Economic Regional Study Area .....	20–2
Figure 20.1-2. Social and Economic Local Study Area Communities .....	20–3
Figure 20.9-1. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Economic and Social Effects .....	20–84
Figure 21-1. KSM Archaeological Study Area .....	21–2
Figure 21.2-1. Overview of Survey and Shovel Test Locations .....	21–11
Figure 22.1-1. Social and Economic Regional Study Area .....	22–2
Figure 22.1-2. Social and Economic Local Study Area Communities .....	22–4
Figure 22.9-1. KSM Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Economic and Social Effects .....	22–76
Figure 23.1-1. KSM Land Use Study Areas.....	23–2
Figure 23.1-2. Land and Resource Management Plans in the Land Use Study Areas.....	23–10
Figure 23.1-3. Nisga’a Lands, the Nass Wildlife Area and the Nass Area in Relation to the Land Use Study Area.....	23–13
Figure 23.1-4. Land Use Study Areas and Tahltan Nation Traditional Territory .....	23–14
Figure 23.1-5. Land Use Study Areas and Skii km Lax Ha and Gitxsan Nation Traditional Territory .....	23–16
Figure 23.1-6. Land Use Study Areas and Gitanyow First Nation Traditional Territory .....	23–18
Figure 23.1-7. Guide Outfitting Licence Areas in the Land Use Study Areas .....	23–20

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 23.1-8. Trapline Licences and Cabins in the Land Use Study Areas .....	23–22
Figure 23.1-9. Commercial Recreation Licences in the Land Use Study Areas .....	23–24
Figure 23.1-10. Forest Licences In and Near the Land Use Study Areas .....	23–26
Figure 23.1-11. Mineral Claims in the Land Use Study Areas (as at December 2012) .....	23–28
Figure 23.1-12. Placer Claims in the Land Use Study Areas (as at December 2012).....	23–29
Figure 23.1-13. Water Licences and Applications in the Land Use Study Areas.....	23–31
Figure 23.1-14. Transportation and Utilities in the Land Use Study Areas.....	23–34
Figure 23.9-1. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Land Use.....	23–99
Figure 24.1-1. Project Setting for Visual and Aesthetic Resources.....	24–3
Figure 24.1-2. Visual and Aesthetics Assessment Method .....	24–6
Figure 24.4-1. Areas from which Project Infrastructure may be Viewed .....	24–15
Figure 24.5-1. Considered and Excluded Visual and Aesthetic Resources Valued Components .....	24–19
Figure 24.7-1. Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for River Rafting Tours.....	24–28
Figure 24.7-2. Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for Heli-skiing Tours.....	24–32
Figure 24.7-3. Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for Guided Backcountry Expeditions .....	24–40
Figure 24.7-4. Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for Guided Angling Trips .....	24–43
Figure 24.7-5. Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for Visitors to the Treaty Creek Site and Users of Highway 37 .....	24–47
Figure 24.9-1. KSM Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Visual Quality and Aesthetics .....	24–64
Figure 25.7-1. Human Sensitive Receptor Locations and Annual Total PM <sub>2.5</sub> Concentration during Operation.....	25–41
Figure 25.9-1. KSM Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Country Food Quality .....	25–100

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 26.1-1. Conceptual Environmental Management System Framework .....	26–3
Figure 26.1-2. KSM Project Environmental Reporting Structure .....	26–7
Figure 26.3-1. Location of Rock Storage Facilities .....	26–21
Figure 26.4-1. Tailing Management Facility General Arrangement.....	26–35
Figure 26.5-1. Water Storage Facility Dam Sections .....	26–49
Figure 26.10-1. Draft General Procedure for Fuel Transfer .....	26–110
Figure 26.11-1. Proposed KSM Project Dustfall Monitoring Stations .....	26–131
Figure 26.11-2. KSM Project Baseline Monitoring Stations for Meteorology, Snow, Precipitation, and Evaporation.....	26–135
Figure 26.11-3. KSM Project Regional Stations .....	26–137
Figure 26.12-1. The GHG Mitigation Hierarchy .....	26–143
Figure 26.15-1. Groundwater Monitoring Locations in the Mine Site .....	26–178
Figure 26.15-2. Groundwater Monitoring Locations in the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	26–181
Figure 26.15-3. Predicted Concentrations at Long Term Monitoring Wells in the Mine Site .....	26–182
Figure 26.15-4. Predicted Concentrations at Long Term Monitoring Wells in the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	26–183
Figure 26.16-1. Use of Ablation Stakes in Measuring Summer Mass Balance .....	26–188
Figure 26.17-1. Mine Site Ultimate Water Management Plan .....	26–191
Figure 26.17-2. Processing and Tailing Management Area Ultimate Water Management Plan .....	26–192
Figure 26.17-3. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area during Years 0 to 10 of Operation .....	26–199
Figure 26.17-4. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area during Years 10 to 25 of Operation ....	26–200
Figure 26.17-5. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area during Years 26 to 30 of Operation ....	26–201
Figure 26.17-6. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area during Years 30 to 51 of Operation ....	26–202
Figure 26.17-7. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area during Years 51 to 56 of Operation ....	26–203
Figure 26.17-8. Subcatchments of Mine Site Area after 57 Years of Operation.....	26–204



## Table of Contents

---

Figure 26.17-9. Baseline and Predicted Flows within Sulphurets Creek for a 1 in 200 Dry Year .....	26-205
Figure 26.17-10. Baseline and Predicted Flows within Sulphurets Creek for an Average Year .....	26-206
Figure 26.17-11. Baseline and Predicted Flows within Sulphurets Creek for a 1 in 200 Wet Year .....	26-207
Figure 26.17-12. Baseline and Predicted Flows within the Unuk River and Sulphurets Creek for a 1 in 200 Dry Year .....	26-208
Figure 26.17-13. Baseline and Predicted Flows within the Unuk River and Sulphurets Creek for an Average Year .....	26-209
Figure 26.17-14. Baseline and Predicted Flows within the Unuk River and Sulphurets Creek for a 1 in 200 Wet Year .....	26-210
Figure 26.17-15. Subcatchments of PTMA during Years 0 to 24 of Operation .....	26-218
Figure 26.17-16. Subcatchments of PTMA during Years 25 to 30 of Operation.....	26-219
Figure 26.17-17. Subcatchments of PTMA during Years 30 to 45 of Operation.....	26-220
Figure 26.17-18. Subcatchments of PTMA during Years 45 to 51 of Operation.....	26-221
Figure 26.17-19. Subcatchments of PTMA during Years 51 to 56 of Operation.....	26-222
Figure 26.17-20. Subcatchments of PTMA after 57 Years of Operation .....	26-223
Figure 26.17-21. Predicted and Baseline Flows within North Treaty Creek for a 1 in 200 Dry Year .....	26-224
Figure 26.17-22. Predicted and Baseline Flows within North Treaty Creek for an Average Year .....	26-225
Figure 26.17-23. Predicted and Baseline Flows within North Treaty Creek for a 1 in 200 Wet Year .....	26-226
Figure 26.17-24. Predicted and Baseline Flows within Treaty Creek for a 1 in 200 Dry Year .....	26-227
Figure 26.17-25. Predicted and Baseline Flows within Treaty Creek for an Average Year.....	26-228
Figure 26.17-26. Predicted and Baseline Flows within Treaty Creek for a 1 in 200 Wet Year .....	26-229
Figure 27.4-1. KSM Project Soil Salvage Map 1.....	27-17
Figure 27.4-2. KSM Project Soil Salvage Map 2.....	27-19

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 27.4-3. KSM Project Soil Salvage Map 3.....	27–21
Figure 27.4-4. Approximate Soil Salvage Area in the Mitchell and McTagg Rock Storage Facilities' Footprint.....	27–23
Figure 27.4-5. Soil Suitability for Reclamation in Rock Storage Facilities' Footprint .....	27–24
Figure 27.5-1. Mine Site at Closure.....	(map pocket)
Figure 27.5-2. Mine Site at Post-closure .....	(map pocket)
Figure 27.5-3. Processing and Tailing Management Area at Closure.....	(map pocket)
Figure 27.5-4. Processing and Tailing Management Area at Post-closure .....	(map pocket)
Figure 27.5-5. Mitchell Pit at End of Operations and at Closure .....	27–31
Figure 27.5-6. Mitchell Pit Block Cave Mine at Closure .....	27–34
Figure 27.5-7. Sulphurets Pit Backfill with Kerr Pit Waste Rock .....	27–36
Figure 27.5-8. Water Management on Kerr Waste Rock .....	27–38
Figure 27.5-9. Closure and Reclamation of the Sulphurets Pit Backfill .....	27–39
Figure 27.5-10. Plan View of Iron Block Cave Mine .....	27–42
Figure 27.5-11. Iron Cap Block Cave Mine at Closure.....	27–44
Figure 27.5-12. Water Management of Rock Storage Facilities at Post-closure .....	27–45
Figure 27.5-13. Rock Storage Facilities .....	27–46
Figure 27.5-14. Area Above Water Storage Facility Not Reclaimed or Re-sloped .....	27–47
Figure 27.5-15. Sludge Landfill Design .....	27–49
Figure 27.5-16. Reclaimed Portion of Mitchell Rock Storage Facility Ore Stockpile .....	27–50
Figure 27.5-17. Re-contoured and Reclaimed Mitchell and McTagg Rock Storage Facilities .....	27–51
Figure 27.5-18. Mitchell Ore Preparation Complex during Operation and at Closure .....	27–54
Figure 27.5-19. Plant Site Facilities at End of Operation .....	27–57
Figure 27.5-20. Treaty Process Plant Site Facilities at Post-closure.....	27–61
Figure 27.5-21. Construction of the Tailing Management Facility .....	27–63

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 27.5-22. Ponds in the Tailing Management Facility .....	27-65
Figure 27.5-23. Closure of the North Cell .....	27-67
Figure 27.5-24. Expansion of Beaches and Decrease in Pond Area for South Cell Reclamation .....	27-69
Figure 27.5-25. The Tailing Management Facility at Post-closure .....	27-71
Figure 27.5-26. Reclamation of the Tailing Management Facility .....	27-75
Figure 27.5-27. Wetland Development in the Tailing Management Facility at Post-closure .....	27-76
Figure 27.5-28. Overburden Stockpiles and Borrow Sites Along the Coulter Creek Access Road .....	27-78
Figure 27.5-29. Overburden Stockpiles and Borrow Sites Along the Coulter Creek Access Road .....	27-79
Figure 27.5-30. Overburden Stockpiles and Borrow Sites Along the Coulter Creek Access Road .....	27-80
Figure 27.5-31. Location of the Explosives Manufacturing Area, AN Prill Storage Area, and Explosives Magazine .....	27-82
Figure 27.6-1. Closure and Reclamation Plan for the Rock Storage Facilities and the Tailing Management Facility at Post-closure.....	27-87
Figure 27.6-2. Closure and Reclamation Plan for the Rock Storage Facilities at Post-closure .....	27-89
Figure 27.6-3. Closure and Reclamation of the Tailing Management Facility at Post-closure .....	27-92
Figure 27.6-4. Wetland Developed in the Tailing Management Facility at Post-closure.....	27-94
Figure 27.6-5. Tailing Management Facility Dam, Beaches, and Pond at Post-closure .....	27-96
Figure 27.7-1. Reclaimed and Disturbed Areas End of Construction Phase .....	27-97
Figure 27.7-2. Reclaimed and Disturbed Areas End of Operation Phase .....	27-99
Figure 27.7-3. Reclaimed and Disturbed Areas End of Closure Phase .....	27-101
Figure 27.7-4. Reclaimed and Disturbed Areas End of Post-closure Phase .....	27-103
Figure 27.7-5. Total Reclaimed and Final Disturbed Area at Post-closure.....	27-105
Figure 28.4-1. KSM Project Environmental Reporting Structure .....	28-5

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 29.1-1. Proposed KSM Project in relation to the Nass Area, the Nass Wildlife Area, Nisga'a Lands, and Nisga'a Fee Simple Lands .....	29-2
Figure 29.1-2. KSM Project Layout .....	29-4
Figure 29.1-3. Location of Processing and Tailing Management Area in relation to the Nisga'a Nass Area.....	29-5
Figure 30.1-1. KSM Project Location.....	30-2
Figure 30.1-2. 2012 KSM Project Layout.....	30-3
Figure 30.2-1. Tahltan Nation Traditional Territory in relation to the KSM Project .....	30-5
Figure 30.2-2. Gitanyow First Nation Traditional Territory in relation to the KSM Project.....	30-6
Figure 30.2-3. Gitksan Nation, including wilp Skii km Lax Ham, and Skii km Lax Ha Traditional Territories in relation to the KSM Project.....	30-8
Figure 31.3-1. KSM Navigable Waters Baseline Study Area .....	31-13
Figure 31.3-2. Coulter Creek Access Road and Mine Site Navigable Stream Crossing Locations .....	31-16
Figure 31.3-3. Processing Tailing Management Area and Treaty Creek Access Road Navigable Stream Crossing Locations .....	31-20
Figure 31.3-4. Navigable Streams Potentially Affected by Proposed Fish Habitat Compensation Works .....	31-21
Figure 31.4-1. Navigable Waters Local Study Area .....	31-23
Figure 31.9-1. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Navigable Waters.....	31-58
Figure 33.3-1. Old Footprint - 2011 KSM Project Open Pit Mining – Pit Limits and Waste Rock at End of Operation .....	33-13
Figure 33.3-2. New Footprint - 2012 KSM Project Combined Open Pit and Block Cave Mining - Pit Limits and Waste Rock at End of Operation .....	33-14
Figure 33.3-3. Old and New Footprint Comparison - Pit Limits and Waste Rock Footprint at End of Operation .....	33-15
Figure 33.5-1. Environment Canada Guidelines for the Assessment of Alternatives for Mine Waste Disposal Flowchart .....	33-21
Figure 33.5-2. KSM Project – Candidate Alternatives for Tailing Management Facility Locations.....	33-25

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 33.6-1. KSM Project Process Plant Location Alternatives.....	33–35
Figure 33.7-1. KSM Project Access Route Alternatives.....	33–47
Figure 33.8-1. Ore Transport Route .....	33–62
Figure 33.8-2. Cross-section of the Ore Slurry Pipeline.....	33–63
Figure 33.8-3. Cross-section of Ore Conveyor Tunnel .....	33–67
Figure 33.9-1. KSM Project Routes to Nearest Ports .....	33–69
Figure 33.9-2. KSM Project Concentrate Transport Alternative Routes.....	33–70
Figure 33.9-3. Safety of Rail Transport .....	33–75
Figure 33.10-1. Thermodynamic Stability of Gold Lixivants .....	33–90
Figure 33.11-1. KSM Project Waste Rock Alternative Disposal Sites .....	33–100
Figure 33.12-1. KSM Project Areas and Surface Water Features.....	33–109
Figure 33.12-2. TMF Discharge Direction Alternatives .....	33–115
Figure 33.12-3. Low Density Sludge (LDS) Water Treatment Process .....	33–124
Figure 33.12-4. High Density Sludge (HDS) Water Treatment Process.....	33–127
Figure 33.13-1. Simplified Flowsheet – Semi-autogenous Grinding Ball Mills Circuit Option.....	33–137
Figure 33.13-2. Simplified Flowsheet – High Pressure Grinding Rolls Option .....	33–139
Figure 33.18-1. Summary of Project Alternatives Evaluation.....	33–149
Figure 35.2-1. Graphical Summary of Risk Evaluation .....	35–16
Figure 35.2-2. Risk Matrix – High Risks Summary .....	35–19
Figure 35.2-3. Risk Matrix – Group A: Tailing Management Area and Plant Site.....	35–24
Figure 35.2-4a. Group A, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–25
Figure 35.2-4b. Group A, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–26
Figure 35.2-4c. Group A, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–27
Figure 35.2-5. Risk Matrix – Group B: Mine Site Area .....	35–28
Figure 35.2-6a. Group B, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–29

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 35.2-6b. Group B, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–30
Figure 35.2-6c. Group B, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–31
Figure 35.2-6d. Group B, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–32
Figure 35.2-6e. Group B, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–33
Figure 35.2-6f. Group B, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–34
Figure 35.2-6g. Group B, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–35
Figure 35.2-6h. Group B, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–36
Figure 35.2-7. Risk Matrix – Group C: Tunnels .....	35–37
Figure 35.2-8a. Group C, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–38
Figure 35.2-8b. Group C, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–39
Figure 35.2-8c. Group C, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–40
Figure 35.2-8d. Group C, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–41
Figure 35.2-8e. Group C, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–42
Figure 35.2-8f. Group C, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–43
Figure 35.2-8g. Group C, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–44
Figure 35.2-8h. Group C, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–45
Figure 35.2-8i. Group C, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–46
Figure 35.2-9. Risk Matrix – Group D: Access Power, Fuel Distribution and Explosives ....	35–47
Figure 35.2-10a. Group D, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–48
Figure 35.2-10b. Group D, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–49
Figure 35.2-10c. Group D, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet.....	35–50
Figure 35.2-10d. Group D, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–51
Figure 35.2-10e. Group D, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–52
Figure 35.2-10f. Group D, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–53
Figure 35.2-10g. Group D, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–54

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 35.2-10h. Group D, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis Worksheet .....	35–55
Figure 37.2-1. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Scoping: Projects and Activities Considered for Biophysical Environment Assessments .....	37–4
Figure 37.2-2. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Scoping: Human Activities (Projects) and Areas Considered for Human Environmental Assessments .....	37–5
Figure 37.2-3. Estimated Present and Future Project Timelines.....	37–11
Figure 37.6-1. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Air Quality .....	37–18
Figure 37.6-2. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils .....	37–25
Figure 37.6-3. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Groundwater .....	37–34
Figure 37.6-4. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Surface Water .....	37–42
Figure 37.6-5. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Fish and Aquatic Habitat .....	37–50
Figure 37.6-6. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Wetlands .....	37–81
Figure 37.6-7. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	37–87
Figure 37.6-8. Moose Cumulative Effects Assessment Area and Movement Area .....	37–119
Figure 37.6-9. Mountain Goat Cumulative Effects Assessment Area and Movement Area .....	37–120
Figure 37.6-10. Grizzly Bear and Black Bear Cumulative Effects Assessment Area and Movement Area .....	37–121
Figure 37.6-11. American Marten Cumulative Effects Assessment Area.....	37–122
Figure 37.6-12. Western Toad Cumulative Effects Assessment Area .....	37–123
Figure 37.6-13. Cumulative Effects Assessment Area for Hoary Marmots, Birds, and Bats .....	37–124
Figure 37.6-14. KSM Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Noise .....	37–156

## Table of Contents

---

Figure 37.6-15. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Economic and Social Effects .....	37-164
Figure 37.6-16. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Land Use.....	37-190
Figure 37.6-17. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Visual Quality and Aesthetics .....	37-205
Figure 37.6-18. KSM Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Country Food.....	37-213
Figure 37.6-19. KSM Project Cumulative Effects Issue Scoping: Potential Spatial Linkages for Navigable Waters .....	37-226
Figure 38.1-1. Adaptive Management Process.....	38-3

### LIST OF TABLES

<b>Table</b>	<b>Page</b>
Table 1.3-1. Metal Prices and Net Smelter Price.....	1-4
Table 1.3-2. Measured and Indicated Lerchs-Grossman Pit Resources .....	1-5
Table 1.3-3. Measured and Indicated Lerchs-Grossman Pit Resources – In Situ Metal .....	1-5
Table 1.4-1. Exploration History of the Kerr Zone.....	1-10
Table 1.4-2. Exploration History of the Sulphurets, Mitchell, and Iron Cap Zones .....	1-11
Table 1.5-1. KSM Claim Block .....	1-13
Table 1.5-2. Seabee/Tina Claim Block .....	1-14
Table 1.5-3. KSM Placer Tenure Blocks.....	1-16
Table 1.7-1. Key Changes to the Project Design Resulting from the Environmental Assessment Planning Process .....	1-25
Table 1.8-1. Comparison of Key Design Features for the KSM Project to Other Mining Projects .....	1-37
Table 2.1-1. Membership of the British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office/Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency-led KSM Project Environmental Assessment Working Group.....	2-10



## Table of Contents

---

Table 2.1-2. British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office Pre-Application and Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency Pre-submission Milestones for the KSM Project .....	2-13
Table 2.1-3. British Columbia Environmental Assessment Office and Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency Anticipated Milestones for the Application for an Environmental Assessment Certificate / Environmental Impact Statement Review Phase of the KSM Project .....	2-19
Table 2.1-4. Provincial Authorizations under Concurrent Review with Application / Environmental Impact Statement.....	2-20
Table 2.1-5. Additional Provincial Authorizations Required for the KSM Project.....	2-22
Table 2.1-6. Federal Authorizations Required for the KSM Project.....	2-23
Table 3.2-1. Nisga'a Community Meetings.....	3-8
Table 3.2-2. Nisga'a Social, Economic, Resource Use, and Cultural Survey Training Sessions.....	3-10
Table 3.2-3. Focus Group Participation by Group Type and Location .....	3-11
Table 3.3-1. Tahltan Community Meetings.....	3-19
Table 3.4-1. Summary of Working Group Meeting Dates, Locations, Topics, and Participants .....	3-25
Table 3.4-2. Government Agency and Local Government Site Visits .....	3-29
Table 3.5-1. Summary of Summer 2010 Open Houses .....	3-32
Table 3.5-2. Comments Received during the Public Comment Period on the Draft Application Information Requirements .....	3-33
Table 3.5-3. Summary of Seabridge Fall 2012 Open Houses.....	3-34
Table 3.5-4. Summary of Interviews with Tenure Holders .....	3-36
Table 3.5-5. Participation in Conferences and Panels .....	3-37
Table 3.5-6. 2011 Advertorials, Notices, and Newspaper Articles (Appendix 3-G) .....	3-38
Table 3.5-7. 2012 Notices and Newspaper Articles (Appendix 3-H) .....	3-38
Table 3.5-8. 2012 Advertorials (Appendix 3-H).....	3-39
Table 3.5-9. Summary of Seabridge's Community Investment.....	3-39
Table 4.3-1. KSM Mineral Resources at 0.5 g/t AuEq Cut-off Grade.....	4-5

## Table of Contents

---

Table 4.5-1. Mine Rock and Overburden Production Schedule .....	4-22
Table 4.5-2. Estimated Lengths of the Various Drift Types for the Mitchell Block Cave Mine .....	4-42
Table 4.5-3. Ground Support Proposed for Mitchell Block Cave Mine Infrastructure .....	4-47
Table 4.5-4. Total Production and Average Grades for Mitchell .....	4-52
Table 4.5-5. Peak Mobile Equipment Requirements for the Mitchell Block Cave Mine (Year 14) .....	4-55
Table 4.5-6. A Summary of the Major Contributors to the Peak Electrical Load at the Mitchell Block Cave Mine.....	4-56
Table 4.5-7. Estimated Lengths of the Various Openings on the Extraction Level.....	4-80
Table 4.5-8. Ground Support Recommended for Iron Cap Block Cave Mine Infrastructure .....	4-88
Table 4.5-9. Total Production and Average Grades for Iron Cap.....	4-90
Table 4.5-10. Peak Mobile Equipment Requirements for the Iron Cap Mine (Year 32).....	4-90
Table 4.5-11. A Summary of the Major Contributors to the Peak Electrical Load at the Iron Cap Block Cave Mine .....	4-93
Table 4.5-12. Target Factors of Safety for Stability Analysis of the McTagg Rock Storage Facility.....	4-106
Table 4.5-13. Quantities for Construction of the Water Storage Dam .....	4-145
Table 4.5-14. Annual Reagent Consumption for the High Density Sludge Treatment Plant.....	4-154
Table 4.5-15. Mine Site Water Treatment Plant Effluent Quality.....	4-155
Table 4.5-16. Predicted Effluent Quality from the Selenium Treatment Plant .....	4-158
Table 4.5-17. Ore Processing Schedule.....	4-181
Table 4.5-18. Mass Balances for Main Process Streams .....	4-190
Table 4.5-19. Estimated Densities of Deposited Tailing .....	4-195
Table 4.5-20. Tailing Dam Sizes .....	4-209
Table 4.5-21. Tailing Management Facility Dam Safety and Flood Management .....	4-226

## Table of Contents

---

Table 4.5-22. Distribution of Coulter Creek Access Road Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage Classification .....	4-241
Table 4.5-23. Distribution of the Treaty Creek Access Road Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage Classification .....	4-259
Table 4.6-1. Major Mine Equipment Requirements .....	4-273
Table 4.6-2. Mine Support Equipment Fleet .....	4-274
Table 4.6-3. Mine Ancillary Equipment Fleet .....	4-274
Table 4.6-4. Peak Mobile Equipment Requirement for the Iron Cap Mine (Year 7) .....	4-276
Table 4.7-1. Estimated Explosives Use .....	4-279
Table 4.8-1. Construction and Operating Camps .....	4-281
Table 4.8-2. KSM Project Construction and Operating Camps Wastewater Treatment System Summary .....	4-287
Table 4.9-1. Estimated Open Pit Mining Labour Requirements .....	4-301
Table 4.9-2. Estimated Peak Employment by Category for the Mitchell Block Cave Mine .....	4-303
Table 4.9-3. Estimated Off-site Employees .....	4-305
Table 4.11-1. KSM Project Capital and Operating Expenditures, 2014 to 2071 .....	4-310
Table 5.2-1. Identification and Rationale for Selected <Example> Valued Component(s) .....	5-6
Table 5.2-2. Identification and Rationale for Excluded <Example> Valued Component(s) .....	5-6
Table 5.2-3. Valued Components Selected for Assessment .....	5-6
Table 5.2-4. Potential Effects from Project on <VC Example> .....	5-8
Table 5.2-5. Potential Effects of the KSM Project .....	5-10
Table 5.2-6. Potential Residual Effects on <Assessment Topic> Valued Components .....	5-13
Table 5.2-7. Summary of Residual Effects for <Assessment Topic> .....	5-17
Table 5.3-1. Summary of Other Activities Expected to Interact Cumulatively with Project-related Residual Effects on <VC> .....	5-20
Table 5.3-2. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on <VC> .....	5-21
Table 5.4-1. Summary of Closed Mining Projects in the CEA Study Areas .....	5-27

## Table of Contents

---

Table 5.4-2. Summary of Present Projects within the CEA Study Area .....	5-35
Table 5.4-3. Summary of Reasonably Foreseeable Future Projects within the CEA Study Area .....	5-40
Table 5.4-4. Summary of Land Use Activities .....	5-55
Table 5.4-5. Potential Cumulative One-way Trips per Day as a Result of KSM and Other Projects during Operation .....	5-65
Table 6.1-1. GHG Emission Legislation and Initiatives .....	6-8
Table 6.2-1. Global GHG Emissions (2009, not counting LULUCF*) .....	6-12
Table 6.2-2. National and Provincial GHG Emissions, Including Mining Sector .....	6-13
Table 6.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Atmospheric Climate (Greenhouse Gases) Valued Component Selection .....	6-18
Table 6.6-1. KSM GHG Calculation and Assessment Endpoints .....	6-19
Table 6.6-2. Summary of KSM Scope 1 to 3 Greenhouse Gas Emissions Considered .....	6-23
Table 6.6-3. Land Use Categories .....	6-24
Table 6.6-4. Component Scoping Table of Potential Effects from Project on Atmospheric GHG Levels .....	6-25
Table 6.6-5. Scoping Table of Potential Effects of KSM Project on Atmospheric GHG Levels .....	6-27
Table 6.7-1. Projected Diesel Fuel Consumption for the KSM Project .....	6-30
Table 6.7-2. KSM Project Facility-level GHG Assessment .....	6-31
Table 6.7-3. BEC Units in the KSM Area .....	6-32
Table 6.7-4. All Phases Land-use Change - Summary across KSM Project Footprint .....	6-34
Table 6.7-5. KSM Project Land-use Change GHG Emissions .....	6-35
Table 6.7-6. GHG Mitigation Strategies Used at KSM Project .....	6-43
Table 6.7-7. Potential Residual Effects on Atmospheric Greenhouse Gas Levels .....	6-46
Table 6.7-8. Comparison of KSM Project to Provincial and National Facility-level GHG Emissions .....	6-48
Table 6.7-9. KSM Project and other BC Mining Project GHGs .....	6-49

## Table of Contents

---

Table 6.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for GHGs Residual Effects.....	6–50
Table 6.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects of KSM Project on Atmospheric GHG Levels .....	6–54
Table 6.8-3. Executive Summary: Overall Significance of Residual Effects on Atmospheric GHG Levels as a Result of the KSM Project .....	6–55
Table 6.9-1. Summary of Assessment of Residual Effects: Greenhouse Gas .....	6–56
Table 7.1-1. Federal and Provincial Ambient Air Quality Criteria .....	7–4
Table 7.1-2. Strong and Weak El Niño – Southern Oscillation Conditions Since 2008 .....	7–16
Table 7.1-3. Air Emissions inside the Regional Study Area .....	7–17
Table 7.1-4. Project Background Ambient Air Quality Concentrations .....	7–18
Table 7.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Selecting Air Quality as a Valued Component.....	7–22
Table 7.6-1. Potential Effects from Project Area on Air Quality.....	7–23
Table 7.6-2. Potential Effects from Project on Air Quality .....	7–25
Table 7.7-1. Tier 4 Emission Standards for Engines up to 560 kw, g/kWh (g/bhp-hr).....	7–27
Table 7.7-2. Potential Residual Effects on Ambient Air Quality .....	7–29
Table 7.8-1. Annual Emissions from Stacks during Construction .....	7–34
Table 7.8-2. Annual Emissions from Equipment Tailpipes during Construction .....	7–35
Table 7.8-3. Total Average Annual One-way Trips on Access Roads during Construction .....	7–36
Table 7.8-4. Annual Emissions from Vehicles Travelling on Access Roads during Construction .....	7–36
Table 7.8-5. Total Average Annual One-way Trips on Highway 37 during Construction.....	7–37
Table 7.8-6. Annual Emissions from Vehicles Travelling on Highway 37 during Construction .....	7–38
Table 7.8-7. Annual Emissions from Debris Burning .....	7–38
Table 7.8-8. Annual Emissions from Mining Activities during Construction.....	7–39
Table 7.8-9. Annual Emissions of Fugitive Dust Emissions from Unpaved Roads during Construction .....	7–40

## Table of Contents

---

Table 7.8-10. Annual Emissions of Fugitive Dust Emissions from Paved Roads during Construction .....	7-41
Table 7.8-11. Total Annual Emissions during Construction .....	7-41
Table 7.8-12. Annual Emissions from Stacks during Operation.....	7-42
Table 7.8-13. Total Annual Emissions during Operation.....	7-43
Table 7.8-14. Building Heights .....	7-44
Table 7.8-15. CALPUFF Model Switch Settings.....	7-46
Table 7.8-16. Point Sources Dispersion Modelling Parameters.....	7-49
Table 7.8-17. Maximum SO <sub>2</sub> Predicted Concentrations during Construction .....	7-50
Table 7.8-18. Maximum NO <sub>2</sub> Concentrations during Construction.....	7-50
Table 7.8-19. Frequency of Exceedance for NO <sub>2</sub> during Construction.....	7-59
Table 7.8-20. Maximum CO Concentrations during Construction.....	7-59
Table 7.8-21. Maximum TSP Concentrations during Construction .....	7-65
Table 7.8-22. Frequency of Exceedance for Total TSP during Construction .....	7-65
Table 7.8-23. Maximum PM <sub>10</sub> Concentrations during Construction .....	7-67
Table 7.8-24. Frequency of Exceedance for Total PM <sub>10</sub> during Construction.....	7-67
Table 7.8-25. Maximum PM <sub>2.5</sub> Concentrations during Construction.....	7-67
Table 7.8-26. Frequency of Exceedance for Total PM <sub>2.5</sub> during Construction .....	7-72
Table 7.8-27. Maximum 30-day Dust Deposition during Construction .....	7-72
Table 7.8-28. Annual Acid Deposition during Construction.....	7-76
Table 7.8-29. Summary of Construction Results .....	7-77
Table 7.8-30. Maximum SO <sub>2</sub> Predicted Concentrations for Operation.....	7-78
Table 7.8-31. Maximum NO <sub>2</sub> Concentrations for Operation.....	7-78
Table 7.8-32. Maximum CO Concentrations for Operation.....	7-78
Table 7.8-33. Maximum TSP Concentrations during Operation.....	7-88
Table 7.8-34. Frequency of Exceedance for Total TSP during Operation.....	7-88

## Table of Contents

---

Table 7.8-35. Maximum PM <sub>10</sub> Concentrations during Operation.....	7-88
Table 7.8-36. Frequency of Exceedance for Total PM <sub>10</sub> during Operation.....	7-88
Table 7.8-37. Maximum PM <sub>2.5</sub> Concentrations during Operation.....	7-93
Table 7.8-38. Maximum 30-day Dust Deposition during Operation.....	7-93
Table 7.8-39. Annual Acid Deposition during Operation.....	7-93
Table 7.8-40. Summary of Operation Results.....	7-94
Table 7.9-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Air Quality Residual Effects.....	7-99
Table 7.9-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Air Quality.....	7-102
Table 7.10-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between KSM Project and Other Human Activities.....	7-105
Table 7.10-2. Cumulative Effect on Air Quality.....	7-111
Table 7.11-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Air Quality.....	7-113
Table 8.1-1. Mass Movement and Avalanche Risk Rating for Slopes within the Local Study Area.....	8-6
Table 8.1-2. Distribution of Surficial Materials in the Baseline Study Area.....	8-9
Table 8.1-3. Soil Mapping Units in the Baseline Study Area.....	8-12
Table 8.1-4. Baseline Metal Concentration Found in Soils within the Local Study Area Compared to Contaminated Sites Regulation and CCME Guidelines.....	8-16
Table 8.1-5. Proportion of Sampling Sites where Baseline Metal Concentrations Exceeded CCME Guidelines.....	8-17
Table 8.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils Valued Component Selection.....	8-23
Table 8.6-1. Potential Project Effects on Soil Quantity and Quality.....	8-25
Table 8.7-1. Summary of Lost, Degraded, and Reclaimed Areas by Project Phase and by Soil Mapping Unit.....	8-29
Table 8.7-2. Potential Residual Effects on Soil Quantity.....	8-35
Table 8.7-3. Potential Residual Effects on Soil Quality.....	8-43
Table 8.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Terrain, Surficial Geology, and Soils Residual Effects.....	8-53

## Table of Contents

---

Table 8.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Soil Quantity .....	8–55
Table 8.8-3. Summary of Residual Effects on Soil Quality .....	8–61
Table 8.9-1. Summary of Potential Cumulative Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Activities with Regard to Terrain and Soils.....	8–69
Table 8.9-2. Summary of Projects and Human Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Soil Quantity.....	8–72
Table 8.9-3. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Soil Quantity.....	8–73
Table 8.9-4. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Soil Quality .....	8–78
Table 8.9-5. Summary of Cumulative Effects on Soil Quality.....	8–81
Table 8.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Terrain and Soils .....	8–84
Table 9.1-1. Summary of Identified Geohazard Scenarios and Associated Risks of the Project.....	9–10
Table 9.1-2. Terrain Stability Class Ratings (Adapted from Appendix 9-G) .....	9–10
Table 9.1-3. Definitions of Hazard Magnitude for Landslides.....	9–11
Table 9.1-4. Avalanche Size Classification.....	9–12
Table 9.6-1. Scoping Table for Potential Interactions between Project Areas and Unstable/ Potentially Unstable Terrain.....	9–29
Table 9.7-1. Project Areas Associated with TSC IV Terrain.....	9–36
Table 9.7-2. Project Areas Associated with TSC V Terrain .....	9–49
Table 9.7-3. Potential Residual Effects of Road Construction on Terrain Stability .....	9–51
Table 9.7-4. Potential Residual Effects of Mine Site Infrastructure on Terrain Stability.....	9–55
Table 9.7-5. Potential Residual Effects of Processing and Tailing Management Area Infrastructure on Terrain Stability.....	9–57
Table 9.8-1. TSC IV Summary of Polygons Requiring Follow-up Monitoring — Mine Site....	9–65
Table 9.8-2. TSC V Summary of Polygons Requiring Follow-up Monitoring — Mine Site.....	9–65
Table 9.8-3. TSC IV Summary of Polygons Requiring Follow-up Monitoring — Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	9–66



## **Table of Contents**

---

Table 9.8-4. Summary of Polygons Requiring Follow-up Monitoring — Access Roads .....	9–66
Table 10.1-1. Breakdown of Project Components .....	10–3
Table 10.1-2. Metal Leaching/Acid Rock Drainage Characterization Program Design.....	10–4
Table 10.1-3. Acid Base Accounting Block Model Codes and Associated Descriptions.....	10–13
Table 10.1-4. Summary of Acid Base Accounting Test Results for Waste Rock and Potential Pit Wall Material.....	10–14
Table 10.1-5. Humidity Cell Representivity.....	10–17
Table 10.1-6. Waste Rock Humidity Cells Representing Mine Site Waste Rock in the Water Quality Model .....	10–18
Table 10.1-7. pH and Leaching Rates (mg/kg/week) from Kerr and Iron Cap Humidity Cells .....	10–21
Table 10.1-8. pH and Leaching Rates (mg/kg/week) from Sulphurets Humidity Cells .....	10–22
Table 10.1-9. pH and Leaching Rates (mg/kg/week) from Mitchell Humidity Cells .....	10–24
Table 10.1-10. Calculated Lag Times for Mine Site Waste Rock by Model Code .....	10–25
Table 10.1-11. Relative Percent Differences or Relative Standard Deviation between Humidity Cells Used in Model Input Codes.....	10–26
Table 10.1-12. Statistical Summary of Selected Elements in Groundwater Seeps .....	10–29
Table 10.1-13. Summary of Acid Base Accounting Test Results for Tailing Material .....	10–29
Table 10.1-14. pH and Leaching Rates from Tailing Kinetic Tests Representing Source Terms for Tailing Management Facility Tailing Material .....	10–31
Table 10.1-15. pH and Concentrations (mg/L) from Pilot Plant Tests Representing Source Terms for the Ore Process Complex .....	10–33
Table 10.1-16. Summary of Acid Base Accounting Test Results for Non-deposit Overburden Material.....	10–36
Table 10.1-17. Summary of Acid Base Accounting Test Results for Non-deposit Rock Material .....	10–36
Table 10.1-18. Distribution of Coulter Creek Access Road Metal Leaching/Acid Rock Drainage Classification.....	10–37
Table 10.1-19. Distribution of the Treaty Creek Access Road Metal Leaching/Acid Rock Drainage Classification.....	10–37

## Table of Contents

---

Table 10.1-20. Summary of Acid Base Accounting Test Results for Non-deposit Rock Material .....	10-43
Table 10.2-1. Mine Schedule .....	10-46
Table 10.2-2. Waste Schedule by Model Code to Mitchell Rock Storage Facility (in kt) .....	10-47
Table 10.2-3. Waste Schedule by Model Code to McTagg Rock Storage Facility (in kt).....	10-49
Table 10.2-4. Summary of Scaling Factors Used for the Rock Storage Facilities .....	10-51
Table 10.2-5. Waste Schedule by Model Code for Sulphurets Pit Backfill (in kt) .....	10-51
Table 10.2-6. Summary of Scaling Factors Used for the Sulphurets Pit Backfill .....	10-52
Table 10.2-7. Area of Exposed Pit Wall in Sulphurets Pit by Model Code .....	10-53
Table 10.2-8. Area of Exposed Pit Wall in Mitchell Pit by Model Code .....	10-53
Table 10.2-9. Area of Exposed Pit Wall in Kerr Pit by Model Code.....	10-54
Table 10.2-10. Summary of Scaling Factors Used for the Pit Walls.....	10-54
Table 10.2-11. 2D Areas Associated with Block Caving of the Mitchell and Iron Cap Deposit .....	10-57
Table 10.2-12. Volumes of Disturbed Material within the Mitchell and Iron Cap Subsidence Zones.....	10-57
Table 10.2-13. Tailing Management Facility Component Areas (in m <sup>2</sup> ) .....	10-59
Table 10.2-14. Ore Production Schedule (in kt).....	10-59
Table 11.1-1. Stream Low-flow Rates at Key Locations in the Mine Site .....	11-6
Table 11.1-2. Stream Low-flow Rates at Key Points in the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	11-15
Table 11.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Groundwater Quantity Valued Component Selection .....	11-25
Table 11.6-1. Potential Effects from Project on Groundwater Quantity .....	11-27
Table 11.7-1. Potential Residual Effects on Groundwater Quantity .....	11-32
Table 11.7-2. Simulated Flow Rates beneath the Water Storage Dam and Reporting to the Mitchell Creek Down-gradient.....	11-47
Table 11.7-3. Simulated Stream Base Flows Down-gradient of Project Components that Interact with Groundwater Quantity: Mine Site .....	11-48

## **Table of Contents**

---

Table 11.7-4. Simulated Stream Base Flows Down-gradient of Project Components that Interact with Groundwater Quantity: Processing and Tailing Management Area.....	11–50
Table 11.7-5. Processing and Tailing Management Area Flow Model Sensitivity Analysis: Worst-case Scenario Results for Stream Base Flows.....	11–57
Table 11.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Groundwater Quantity Residual Effects .....	11–59
Table 11.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Groundwater Quantity.....	11–62
Table 11.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and other Human Actions in regards to Groundwater Quantity .....	11–69
Table 11.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Groundwater Quantity.....	11–70
Table 11.9-3. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Groundwater Quantity .....	11–73
Table 11.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Groundwater Quantity .....	11–77
Table 12.1-1. Physical Parameters, Concentrations of Major Anions and Nutrients, and Cyanides in Groundwater in the Mine Site.....	12–7
Table 12.1-2. Total and Dissolved Metals Concentrations in Groundwater in the Mine Site .....	12–9
Table 12.1-3. Physical Parameters, Concentrations of Major Anions and Nutrients, and Cyanides in Groundwater in the Processing and Tailing Management Area.....	12–13
Table 12.1-4. Total and Dissolved Metals Concentrations in Groundwater in the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	12–15
Table 12.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Groundwater Quality Valued Component Selection .....	12–25
Table 12.6-1. Potential Effects of the Project on Groundwater Quality .....	12–27
Table 12.7-1. Potential Residual Effects on Groundwater Quality .....	12–33
Table 12.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Groundwater Quality Residual Effects .....	12–73
Table 12.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Groundwater Quality .....	12–79
Table 12.8-3. Estimated Constituent Concentrations in Sources of Residual Effects on Groundwater Quality in the Mine Site .....	12–81

## Table of Contents

---

Table 12.8-4. Estimated Constituent Concentrations in Sources of Residual Effects on Groundwater Quality in the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	12–85
Table 12.8-5. Estimated Maximum Constituent Concentrations (below the Footprint and beyond the North Seepage Collection Dam) in the Plume Emanating from the Tailing Management Facility North Cell .....	12–87
Table 12.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between KSM Project and other Human Actions in regard to Groundwater Quality .....	12–92
Table 12.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Groundwater Quality .....	12–93
Table 12.9-3. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Groundwater Quality .....	12–97
Table 12.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Groundwater Quality .....	12–101
Table 13.1-1. Geographic and Physiographic Details for the Hydrometric Monitoring Stations within the Teigen-Treaty Drainages in 2007-2011 .....	13–4
Table 13.1-2. Geographic and Physiographic Details for the Hydrometric Monitoring Stations within the Unuk-Sulphurets Drainages in 2007-2011 .....	13–7
Table 13.1-3. Operational Periods for Hydrometric Monitoring Stations in the KSM Project Area, 2007-2011 .....	13–8
Table 13.1-4. Regional Water Survey of Canada Stations .....	13–9
Table 13.1-5. Mean Annual Flow and Mean Annual Runoff for the Hydrometric Monitoring Stations .....	13–9
Table 13.1-6. Monthly Distribution of Flow for the Hydrometric Monitoring Stations .....	13–10
Table 13.1-7. Estimates of Peak Flows (m <sup>3</sup> /s) at the Project Stations Based on Regional Quantile Regression Technique .....	13–11
Table 13.1-8. Estimates of 7-Day Low Flows (m <sup>3</sup> /s) at the Project Stations Based on Regional Analysis .....	13–14
Table 13.3-1. Water Quantity Objectives of the Cassiar Iskut-Stikine Land and Resource Management Plan and Nass South Sustainable Resource Management Plan .....	13–18
Table 13.4-1. Assessment Points within Local and Regional Scale Area of the Project .....	13–20
Table 13.4-2. Area and Flow Pathway of Processing and Tailing Management Area Subcatchments during Different Phases of the Project (km <sup>2</sup> ) .....	13–27
Table 13.4-3. Area and Flow Pathway of Mine Site Subcatchments during Different Phases of the Project (km <sup>2</sup> ) .....	13–28

## Table of Contents

---

Table 13.6-1. Potential Effects from the Project on Streamflows within the Processing and Tailing Management Area and Mine Site Local Study Areas.....	13-42
Table 13.6-2. Potential Effects from Project on Streamflows within the Unuk River and Bell-Irving River Regional Study Areas.....	13-43
Table 13.7-1. Potential for Residual Effects on Surface Water Quantity Valued Components due to Changes in Annual Flow Volumes .....	13-53
Table 13.7-2. Simulated Annual Flow Volumes within the Processing and Tailing Management Area for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-55
Table 13.7-3. Simulated Annual Flow Volumes within the Mine Site for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-60
Table 13.7-4. Simulated Annual Flow Volumes at Bell-Irving River Sites for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-66
Table 13.7-5. Simulated Annual Flow Volumes at Unuk River Sites for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-67
Table 13.7-6. Potential for Residual Effects on Surface Water Quantity Valued Components due to Changes in Monthly Flow Distribution.....	13-71
Table 13.7-7. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at NTR1A for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-73
Table 13.7-8. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at NTR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-73
Table 13.7-9. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at TRC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-74
Table 13.7-10. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at STE2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-74
Table 13.7-11. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at STE3 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-75
Table 13.7-12. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at TEC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-75
Table 13.7-13. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at MC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-77
Table 13.7-14. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at GC1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-77

## Table of Contents

---

Table 13.7-15. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at SC1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-78
Table 13.7-16. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at SC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-78
Table 13.7-17. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at SC3 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-79
Table 13.7-18. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at BIR1B for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-81
Table 13.7-19. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at BIR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-81
Table 13.7-20. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at UR1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-83
Table 13.7-21. Simulated Monthly Flow Distribution at UR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-83
Table 13.7-22. Potential for Residual Effects on Surface Water Quantity Valued Components due to Changes in Peak Flows .....	13-87
Table 13.7-23. Estimated Peak Flow Values at NTR1A for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-89
Table 13.7-24. Estimated Peak Flow Values at NTR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-89
Table 13.7-25. Estimated Peak Flow Values at TRC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-90
Table 13.7-26. Estimated Peak Flow Values at STE2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-90
Table 13.7-27. Estimated Peak Flow Values at STE3 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-91
Table 13.7-28. Estimated Peak Flow Values at TEC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-91
Table 13.7-29. Estimated Peak Flow Values at MC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-93
Table 13.7-30. Estimated Peak Flow Values at GC1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-93
Table 13.7-31. Estimated Peak Flow Values at SC1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-94

## Table of Contents

---

Table 13.7-32. Estimated Peak Flow Values at SC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-94
Table 13.7-33. Estimated Peak Flow Values at SC3 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-95
Table 13.7-34. Estimated Peak Flow Values at BIR1B for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-97
Table 13.7-35. Estimated Peak Flow Values at BIR1B for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-97
Table 13.7-36. Estimated Peak Flow Values at UR1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-99
Table 13.7-37. Estimated Peak Flow Values at UR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-99
Table 13.7-38. Potential for Residual Effects on Surface Water Quantity Valued Components due to Changes in Low Flows.....	13-103
Table 13.7-39. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at NTR1A for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-105
Table 13.7-40. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at NTR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-105
Table 13.7-41. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at TRC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-106
Table 13.7-42. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at STE2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-106
Table 13.7-43. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at STE3 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-107
Table 13.7-44. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at TEC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-107
Table 13.7-45. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at NTR1A for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-109
Table 13.7-46. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at NTR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-109
Table 13.7-47. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at TRC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-110
Table 13.7-48. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at STE2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project .....	13-110

## Table of Contents

---

Table 13.7-49. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at STE3 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-111
Table 13.7-50. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at TEC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-111
Table 13.7-51. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at MC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-113
Table 13.7-52. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at GC1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-113
Table 13.7-53. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at SC1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-114
Table 13.7-54. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at SC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-114
Table 13.7-55. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at SC3 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-115
Table 13.7-56. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at MC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-115
Table 13.7-57. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at GC1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-117
Table 13.7-58. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at SC1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-117
Table 13.7-59. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at SC2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-118
Table 13.7-60. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at SC3 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-118
Table 13.7-61. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at BIR1B for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-119
Table 13.7-62. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at BIR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-122
Table 13.7-63. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at BIR1B for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-122
Table 13.7-64. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at BIR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-123
Table 13.7-65. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at UR1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13-123



## Table of Contents

---

Table 13.7-66. Estimated Annual 7-Day Low Flow Values at UR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13–126
Table 13.7-67. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at UR1 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13–126
Table 13.7-68. Estimated June to September 7-Day Low Flow Values at UR2 for the Baseline Condition and during Different Phases of the Project.....	13–127
Table 13.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Surface Water Quantity Residual Effects.....	13–129
Table 13.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Streamflows in the Processing and Tailing Management Area.....	13–131
Table 13.8-3. Summary of Residual Effects on Streamflows in the Mine Site.....	13–136
Table 13.8-4. Summary of Residual Effects on Streamflows in Bell-Irving River.....	13–144
Table 13.8-5. Summary of Residual Effects on Streamflows in Unuk River.....	13–148
Table 13.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between KSM Project and other Human Actions in regards to Surface Water Quantity.....	13–159
Table 13.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Streamflows within the Mine Site.....	13–160
Table 13.9-3. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Streamflows within the Mine Site.....	13–161
Table 13.10-1. Summary of assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Surface Water Quantity.....	13–163
Table 14.1-1. Water Quality in Streams and Rivers of the Mine Site, KSM Project, 2007 to 2012.....	14–5
Table 14.1-2. Selenium Species Distribution in Streams, Rivers, and Groundwater Seeps of the Mine Site Area, KSM Project, 2012.....	14–10
Table 14.1-3. Baseline Toxicity Testing Results for Mine Site, KSM Project, 2009 and 2012.....	14–12
Table 14.1-4. Water Quality in Streams and Rivers of the Processing and Tailing Management Area and Reference Sites, KSM Project, 2007 to 2012.....	14–13
Table 14.1-5. Selenium Species Distribution in Streams of the Processing and Tailing Management Area, KSM Project, 2012.....	14–17

## Table of Contents

---

Table 14.1-6. Baseline Toxicity Testing Results for Processing and Tailing Management Area and Scott Creek Reference Site, KSM Project, 2009.....	14–19
Table 14.1-7. Water Quality in Lakes of the KSM Project Area, 2008 to 2012.....	14–21
Table 14.2-1. Comparison of Mine Site Water Quality Baseline Data and Historical Water Quality Data .....	14–25
Table 14.3-1. Water Quality Objectives of the Cassiar Iskut-Stikine Land Resource Management Plan, Nass South Sustainable Resource Management Plan, and Management Direction Statement for Border Lake Provincial Park.....	14–27
Table 14.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Surface Water Quality Valued Component Selection .....	14–29
Table 14.6-1. Potential Effects from Project on Surface Water Quality.....	14–30
Table 14.7-1. Modelled Chemical Parameters.....	14–38
Table 14.7-2. Chemical Composition of Sewage Treatment Plant Effluent.....	14–39
Table 14.7-3. Water Quality Model Scenarios .....	14–40
Table 14.7-4. Source Term Chemistry for the Mine Site Water Quality Model.....	14–45
Table 14.7-5. Catchment Water Quality Estimates.....	14–46
Table 14.7-6. Model Input: Solubility Limits (Mine Site).....	14–47
Table 14.7-7. Rationale for Drainage Quality Predictions for Mine Site Project Components Excluded from the Water Quality Model.....	14–48
Table 14.7-8. Drainage Quality Predictions for Mine Site Overburden.....	14–49
Table 14.7-9. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Water Storage Facility (Construction Phase).....	14–55
Table 14.7-10. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Water Storage Facility (Operation Phase) .....	14–59
Table 14.7-11. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Water Storage Facility (Closure Phase) .....	14–63
Table 14.7-12. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Water Storage Facility (Post-closure Phase).....	14–67
Table 14.7-13. Source Term Chemistry for the Processing and Tailing Management Area Water Quality Model.....	14–74
Table 14.7-14. Catchment Water Quality Estimates.....	14–75

## Table of Contents

---

Table 14.7-15. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the North Cell Tailing Management Facility (Operation Phase) .....	14–83
Table 14.7-16. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the North Cell Tailing Management Facility (Closure Phase).....	14–87
Table 14.7-17. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the North Cell Tailing Management Facility (Post-closure Phase) .....	14–91
Table 14.7-18. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the South Cell Tailing Management Facility (Operation Phase) .....	14–95
Table 14.7-19. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the South Cell Tailing Management Facility (Closure Phase).....	14–99
Table 14.7-20. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the South Cell Tailing Management Facility (Post-closure Phase) .....	14–103
Table 14.7-21. Parameters with Reduced Concentrations from the Selenium Treatment Plant.....	14–113
Table 14.7-22. Discharge Objectives for Temporary Water Treatment Plants .....	14–116
Table 14.7-23. Mine Site Water Treatment Plant Effluent Quality.....	14–118
Table 14.7-24. Potential Residual Effects on Surface Water Quality Valued Components Due to Degradation of Water Quality .....	14–121
Table 14.7-25. Pilot Plant Effluent Toxicity Testing, KSM Project.....	14–127
Table 14.7-26. Pilot Plant Effluent Water Chemistry Concurrent with Toxicity Testing, KSM Project .....	14–128
Table 14.7-27. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for Sulphurets Creek (site SC3; Construction Phase).....	14–131
Table 14.7-28. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for Sulphurets Creek (site SC3; Operation Phase).....	14–135
Table 14.7-29. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for Sulphurets Creek (site SC3; Closure Phase) .....	14–139
Table 14.7-30. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for Sulphurets Creek (site SC3; Post-closure Phase).....	14–143
Table 14.7-31. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Unuk River (site UR1; Construction Phase) .....	14–147
Table 14.7-32. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Unuk River (site UR1; Operation Phase).....	14–160

## Table of Contents

---

Table 14.7-33. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Unuk River (site UR1; Closure Phase).....	14–164
Table 14.7-34. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Unuk River (site UR1; Post-closure Phase).....	14–168
Table 14.7-35. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Unuk River (site UR2; Construction Phase) .....	14–172
Table 14.7-36. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Unuk River (site UR2; Operation Phase).....	14–176
Table 14.7-37. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Unuk River (site UR2; Closure Phase).....	14–180
Table 14.7-38. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for the Unuk River (site UR2; Post-closure Phase).....	14–184
Table 14.7-39. Results of Tailing Supernatant Toxicity Testing, KSM Project.....	14–193
Table 14.7-40. Tailing Supernatant Water Chemistry Concurrent with Toxicity Testing, KSM Project .....	14–193
Table 14.7-41. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for North Treaty Creek (site NTR2; Operation Phase) .....	14–195
Table 14.7-42. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for North Treaty Creek (site NTR2; Closure Phase).....	14–200
Table 14.7-43. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for North Treaty Creek (site NTR2; Post-closure Phase) .....	14–204
Table 14.7-44. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for Treaty Creek (site TRC2; Operation Phase) .....	14–208
Table 14.7-45. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for Treaty Creek (site TRC2; Closure Phase).....	14–212
Table 14.7-46. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for Treaty Creek (site TRC2; Post-closure Phase) .....	14–216
Table 14.7-47. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for South Teigen Creek (site STE3; Operation Phase).....	14–233
Table 14.7-48. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for South Teigen Creek (site STE3; Closure Phase) .....	14–237
Table 14.7-49. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for South Teigen Creek (site STE3; Post-closure Phase).....	14–241

## Table of Contents

---

Table 14.7-50. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for Teigen Creek (site TEC2; Operation Phase).....	14-245
Table 14.7-51. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for Teigen Creek (site TEC2; Closure Phase).....	14-249
Table 14.7-52. Summary Statistics of Water Quality Predictions for Teigen Creek (site TEC2; Post-closure Phase).....	14-253
Table 14.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Surface Water Quality Residual Effects .....	14-263
Table 14.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Surface Water Quality .....	14-265
Table 14.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions with regard to Surface Water Quality .....	14-274
Table 14.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Surface Water Quality .....	14-275
Table 14.9-3. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Surface Water Quality .....	14-277
Table 14.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects on Surface Water Quality.....	14-281
Table 15.1-1. Watersheds within the Baseline Fish and Aquatic Habitat Study Area.....	15-7
Table 15.1-2. Information Sources for the Fish and Aquatic Habitat Baseline Studies.....	15-12
Table 15.1-3. Summary of Fish and Aquatic Habitat Studies for the KSM Project .....	15-13
Table 15.1-4. Summary of Known Fish Species by Watershed .....	15-41
Table 15.1-5. Individual Fish-bearing Stream Crossings .....	15-52
Table 15.1-6. Individual Fish-bearing Stream Crossing Details .....	15-58
Table 15.1-7. Summary of Aquatic Biology and Sediment Quality Data for Streams of the KSM Project, 2008 to 2012 .....	15-67
Table 15.1-8. Summary of Stream Sediment Quality for the KSM Project, 2009 and 2010 .....	15-69
Table 15.1-9. Summary of Stream Sediment Quality for the KSM Project, 2012 .....	15-71
Table 15.1-10. Summary of Aquatic Biology and Sediment Quality Data for Lakes of the KSM Project, 2008 to 2009.....	15-81
Table 15.1-11. Summary of Sediment Quality in Lakes of the KSM Project, 2008 to 2009 .....	15-82

## Table of Contents

---

Table 15.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Fish and Aquatic Habitat Valued Component Selection .....	15–90
Table 15.5-2. Summary of Life History and Habitat Requirements of Selected Valued Component Fish Species of the KSM Project .....	15–93
Table 15.5-3. Valued Component Fish Species Life History Periodicity and Distribution for Teigen Watershed .....	15–95
Table 15.5-4. Valued Component Fish Species Life History Periodicity and Distribution for Treaty Watershed .....	15–99
Table 15.5-5. Rationale for Fish and Aquatic Habitat Valued Components Considered and Excluded from Further Analysis .....	15–103
Table 15.6-1. Potential Effects from the Project on Bull Trout .....	15–107
Table 15.6-2. Potential Effects from the Project on Dolly Varden .....	15–107
Table 15.6-3. Potential Effects from the Project on Rainbow Trout/Steelhead.....	15–109
Table 15.6-4. Potential Effects from the Project on Pacific Salmon .....	15–110
Table 15.6-5. Potential Effects from the Project on Aquatic Habitat.....	15–112
Table 15.7-1. Potential Residual Effects on Fish and Aquatic Habitat Valued Components due to Direct Mortality.....	15–118
Table 15.7-2. Potential Residual Effects on Fish and Aquatic Habitat Valued Components due to Noise .....	15–122
Table 15.7-3. Potential Residual Effects on Fish and Aquatic Habitat Valued Components due to Erosion and Sedimentation.....	15–126
Table 15.7-4. Whole Body Tissue Metal Concentrations in Dolly Varden in the Baseline Study Area, 2008 to 2011 .....	15–132
Table 15.7-5. Hazard Quotients for Selenium in Water Downstream of the Tailing Management Facility, KSM Project.....	15–146
Table 15.7-6. Hazard Quotients of Selenium Downstream of the Mine Site, KSM Project	15–149
Table 15.7-7. Trophic Status of Streams during Baseline Compared to KSM Project Phases .....	15–156
Table 15.7-8. Predicted Change in Nitrogen and Phosphorus Load Downstream of the Tailing Management Facility or Mine Site, KSM Project.....	15–159
Table 15.7-9. Nitrogen to Phosphorus Ratios during Baseline and Various Years of the KSM Project .....	15–166

## Table of Contents

---

Table 15.7-10. Potential Residual Effects on Fish and Aquatic Habitat Valued Components due to Water Quality Degradation.....	15–170
Table 15.7-11. Fish-bearing Stream Crossing Habitat Data for Streams Resulting in Habitat Loss .....	15–179
Table 15.7-12. Individual Fish-bearing Stream Crossing Fisheries Data for Streams Resulting in Habitat Loss .....	15–179
Table 15.7-13. Access Road Stream Habitat Loss Summary .....	15–182
Table 15.7-14. Transmission Line Riparian Habitat Loss Summary .....	15–182
Table 15.7-15. KSM Project Fish Habitat Loss Summary.....	15–182
Table 15.7-16. Dolly Varden Stream Habitat Loss Summary.....	15–183
Table 15.7-17. Dolly Varden Wetland Habitat Loss Summary .....	15–185
Table 15.7-18. Length of Mesohabitat Units in each Macrohabitat .....	15–186
Table 15.7-19. Comparison of Instream Flow Thresholds, based on Hatfield et al. 2003, and Proposed Operational Flows for South Teigen Creek (NTWM-H1) .....	15–187
Table 15.7-20. Comparison of Instream Flow Thresholds, based on Hatfield et al. 2003, and Proposed Operational Flows for North Treaty Creek (STWM-H1).....	15–188
Table 15.7-21. Available Data for Cross-sections on North Treaty Creek.....	15–191
Table 15.7-22. Available Data for Cross-sections on South Teigen Creek .....	15–191
Table 15.7-23. Estimated Dolly Varden Habitat Effect on Weighted Usable Area in North Treaty Creek (Reach 1) .....	15–196
Table 15.7-24. Estimated Dolly Varden Habitat Effect on Weighted Usable Area in North Treaty Creek (Reach 0) .....	15–197
Table 15.7-25. Estimated Dolly Varden Habitat Effect on Weighted Usable Area in South Teigen Creek.....	15–199
Table 15.7-26. Fish Habitat Loss Summary for North Treaty and South Teigen Creeks...	15–206
Table 15.7-27. Comparison of Baseline and Proposed Operational Flows for Teigen Creek (TGN-H1).....	15–207
Table 15.7-28. Comparison of Baseline and Proposed Operational Flows for Treaty Creek (TC-H1).....	15–208
Table 15.7-29. Monthly Flow Discharge Thresholds for Teigen and Treaty Creeks as Determined Using the Guidelines in Hatfield et al. (2003).....	15–209

## Table of Contents

---

Table 15.7-30. Dolly Varden Optimal and Critical Temperatures.....	15–216
Table 15.7-31. Percent Difference in Maximum Monthly Discharge in North Treaty Creek .....	15–220
Table 15.7-32. Percent Difference in Maximum Monthly Discharge in North Treaty Creek .....	15–220
Table 15.7-33. Percent Difference in Maximum Monthly Discharge in Treaty Creek .....	15–221
Table 15.7-34. Non Fish-bearing Aquatic Habitat Loss in the KSM Project Mine Site.....	15–226
Table 15.7-35. Comparison of Baseline and Proposed Operational Flows for Sulphurets Creek (SC3) .....	15–229
Table 15.7-36. Monthly Flow Discharge Thresholds for Sulphurets Creek as Determined using the Guidelines in Hatfield et al. (2003).....	15–230
Table 15.7-37. Potential Residual Effects on the Aquatic Habitat Valued Component due to Habitat Loss and Alteration.....	15–235
Table 15.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Fish and Aquatic Habitat Residual Effects .....	15–239
Table 15.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Bull Trout .....	15–241
Table 15.8-3. Summary of Residual Effects on Dolly Varden .....	15–243
Table 15.8-4. Summary of Residual Effects on Rainbow Trout/Steelhead.....	15–247
Table 15.8-5. Summary of Residual Effects on Pacific Salmon .....	15–251
Table 15.8-6. Summary of Residual Effects on Aquatic Habitat .....	15–269
Table 15.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions in regard to Fish and Aquatic Habitat.....	15–294
Table 15.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Fish Valued Components and Aquatic Habitat Valued Component.....	15–297
Table 15.9.3. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Bull Trout.....	15–301
Table 15.9.4. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Dolly Varden.....	15–303
Table 15.9.5. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Rainbow Trout/Steelhead .....	15–307
Table 15.9.6. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Pacific Salmon.....	15–311
Table 15.9-7. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Aquatic Habitat.....	15–323



## Table of Contents

---

Table 15.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Fish and Aquatic Habitat .....	15–333
Table 16.1-1. BEC Units in the Regional Baseline Study Area .....	16–2
Table 16.1-2. Description of Wetland Classes.....	16–5
Table 16.1-3. Wetland Function and Associated Fieldwork Component.....	16–5
Table 16.1-4. Wetland Associations Observed in the KSM Project Wetland Study.....	16–9
Table 16.1-5. Area of Wetland Classes and Associations in the KSM Wetland Local Baseline Study Area .....	16–11
Table 16.1-6. Summary of Primary Wetland Function within the Local Baseline Study Area .....	16–12
Table 16.1-7. Distribution of Fen Wetland Size .....	16–25
Table 16.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Wetland Valued Component Selection.....	16–39
Table 16.6-1. Potential Effects from the Project on Wetland Extent and Function .....	16–40
Table 16.7-1. Area of Wetland Loss (Maximum Extent of Disturbance).....	16–44
Table 16.7-2. Area of Lost Wetland Class and Associated Mine Infrastructure – Maximum Disturbance.....	16–44
Table 16.7-3. Wetland Compensation Site Details .....	16–49
Table 16.7-4. Potential Residual Effects on Wetland Valued Components due to Direct Project Interaction .....	16–51
Table 16.7-5. Area of Wetlands Degraded from the Maximum Extent of Disturbance .....	16–55
Table 16.7-6. Area of Degraded Wetland Class and Associated Mine Infrastructure – Maximum Extent of Disturbance.....	16–56
Table 16.7-7. Wetland Buffer Guidelines.....	16–57
Table 16.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Wetlands Residual Effects.....	16–63
Table 16.8-2. Magnitude Thresholds for Percent Loss of Local Wetland Class .....	16–65
Table 16.8-3. Summary of Residual Effects on Wetland Extent and Function .....	16–67
Table 16.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between KSM Project and Other Human Actions in Regard to Wetlands .....	16–71

## Table of Contents

---

Table 16.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Wetlands .....	16–73
Table 16.9-3. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Wetland Extent and Function .	16–75
Table 16.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Wetlands .....	16–79
Table 17.1-1. Listed Ecosystems Mapped and Predicted in the Study Areas .....	17–7
Table 17.1-2. Rare Plant Species Identified within the KSM Terrestrial Ecosystems Local Study Area .....	17–10
Table 17.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Terrestrial Ecosystems Valued Component Selection .....	17–22
Table 17.5-2. Terrestrial Ecosystems Valued Components Considered and Excluded from Further Analysis .....	17–27
Table 17.6-1. Terrestrial Ecosystems Issues Identified during Scoping .....	17–28
Table 17.6-2. Overview of Potential Effects on Pine Mushroom Habitat .....	17–28
Table 17.6-3. Overview of Potential Effects on Avalanche Track Ecosystems .....	17–28
Table 17.6-4. Overview of Potential Effects on Listed Ecosystems .....	17–29
Table 17.6-5. Overview of Potential Effects on Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems .....	17–29
Table 17.6-6. Overview of Potential Effects on Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems .....	17–30
Table 17.6-7. Overview of Potential Effects on Old Forest Ecosystems .....	17–30
Table 17.6-8. Overview of Potential Effects on Other Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17–31
Table 17.7-1. Summary of Project-specific Vegetation Loss .....	17–33
Table 17.7-2. Summary of Potential Residual Effects on Terrestrial Ecosystem Valued Components from Vegetation Loss and Degradation .....	17–49
Table 17.7-3. Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat Lost at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment .....	17–55
Table 17.7-4. Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat Lost at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment .....	17–55
Table 17.7-5. Avalanche Track Ecosystems Lost at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment .....	17–55
Table 17.7-6. Avalanche Track Ecosystems Lost at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment .....	17–56

## Table of Contents

---

Table 17.7-7. Listed Ecosystems Lost at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–56
Table 17.7-8. Listed Ecosystems Lost at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment.....	17–65
Table 17.7-9. Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems (Non-listed) Lost at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment .....	17–66
Table 17.7-10. Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems (Non-listed) Lost at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment .....	17–66
Table 17.7-11. Alpine / Parkland Ecosystems Lost at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–71
Table 17.7-12. Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems Lost at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment.....	17–72
Table 17.7-13. Old Forest Ecosystems (TEM Data) Lost at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–72
Table 17.7-14. Old Forest Ecosystems (TEM Data) Lost at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment.....	17–81
Table 17.7-15. Old Forest Ecosystems (VRI Data) Lost at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–81
Table 17.7-16. Old Forest Ecosystems (VRI Data) Lost at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment.....	17–82
Table 17.7-17. Other Terrestrial Ecosystems Lost at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–87
Table 17.7-18. Summary of Project-specific Vegetation Degradation.....	17–88
Table 17.7-19. Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat Degradation at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–92
Table 17.7-20. Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat Degradation at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment.....	17–93
Table 17.7-21. Avalanche Track Ecosystems Degraded at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–94
Table 17.7-22. Avalanche Track Ecosystems Degraded at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment.....	17–94
Table 17.7-23. Listed Ecosystems Degraded at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–95

## Table of Contents

---

Table 17.7-24. Listed Ecosystems Degraded at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment.....	17–95
Table 17.7-25. Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems (Non-listed) Degraded at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment .....	17–96
Table 17.7-26. Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems (Non-listed) Degraded at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment .....	17–96
Table 17.7-27. Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems Degraded at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–97
Table 17.7-28. Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems Degraded at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment.....	17–97
Table 17.7-29. Old Forest Ecosystems (TEM Data) Degraded at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–98
Table 17.7-30. Old Forest Ecosystems (TEM Data) Degraded at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment.....	17–98
Table 17.7-31. Old Forest Ecosystems (VRI Data) Degraded at End of Operation – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–99
Table 17.7-32. Old Forest Ecosystems (VRI Data) Degraded at End of Operation – Watershed Assessment.....	17–99
Table 17.7-33. Other Terrestrial Ecosystems Degraded by the Project – Local Study Area Assessment.....	17–100
Table 17.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Terrestrial Ecosystems Residual Effects .....	17–101
Table 17.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat.....	17–105
Table 17.8-3. Summary of Residual Effects on Avalanche Track Ecosystems .....	17–109
Table 17.8-4. Summary of Residual Effects on Listed Ecosystems.....	17–109
Table 17.8-5. Summary of Residual Effects on Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems .....	17–113
Table 17.8-6. Summary of Residual Effects on Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems.....	17–117
Table 17.8-7. Summary of Residual Effects on Old Forest Ecosystems.....	17–119
Table 17.8-8. Summary of Residual Effects on Other Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	17–123
Table 17.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between KSM Project and Other Human Actions in Regards to Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17–126

## Table of Contents

---

Table 17.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat.....	17–132
Table 17.9-3. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat.....	17–137
Table 17.9-4. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Avalanche Track Ecosystems.....	17–140
Table 17.9-5. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Avalanche Track Ecosystems.....	17–143
Table 17.9-6. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Listed Ecosystems .....	17–147
Table 17.9-7. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Listed Ecosystems .....	17–151
Table 17.9-8. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems.....	17–155
Table 17.9-9. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems.....	17–159
Table 17.9-10. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems .....	17–164
Table 17.9-11. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems.....	17–167
Table 17.9-12. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Old Forest Ecosystems.....	17–171
Table 17.9-13. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Old Forest Ecosystems .....	17–177
Table 17.9-14. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Other Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17–179
Table 17.9-15. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Other Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	17–181
Table 17.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	17–187
Table 18.1-1. Species at Risk Potentially Occurring within the Wildlife Local Study Area and Regional Study Area.....	18–38

## **Table of Contents**

---

Table 18.1-2. Species or Groups of Interest Potentially Occurring within the Wildlife Local Study Area and Regional Study Area.....	18-40
Table 18.3-1. Wildlife Objectives of the Cassiar Iskut-Stikine Land and Resource Management Plan and Nass South Sustainable Resource Management Plan .....	18-46
Table 18.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Wildlife Valued Component Selection .....	18-54
Table 18.5-2. Rationale for Wildlife Valued Components Considered and Excluded from Further Analysis or Reflected by Other Species Assessments .....	18-56
Table 18.6-1. Wildlife Issues Identified during Scoping .....	18-59
Table 18.6-2. Summary of Potential Project Effects on Wildlife Valued Components .....	18-60
Table 18.6-3. Potential Effects from Project on Moose.....	18-62
Table 18.6-4. Potential Effects from Project on Mountain Goat .....	18-63
Table 18.6-5. Potential Effects from Project on Grizzly Bear .....	18-64
Table 18.6-6. Potential Effects from Project on Black Bear .....	18-65
Table 18.6-7. Potential Effects from Project on American Marten.....	18-66
Table 18.6-8. Potential Effects from Project on Hoary Marmot.....	18-67
Table 18.6-9. Potential Effects from Project on Bats .....	18-68
Table 18.6-10. Potential Effects from Project on Raptors .....	18-69
Table 18.6-11. Potential Effects from Project on Wetland Birds .....	18-70
Table 18.6-12. Potential Effects from Project on Forest and Alpine Birds.....	18-71
Table 18.6-13. Potential Effects from Project on Western Toads .....	18-72
Table 18.7-1. Potential Residual Effects on Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Valued Components due to Habitat Loss.....	18-79
Table 18.7-2. Moose Habitat Loss and Alteration due to the Project.....	18-85
Table 18.7-3. Mountain Goat Habitat Loss and Alteration due to the Project.....	18-86
Table 18.7-4. Grizzly Bear Habitat Loss and Alteration due to the Project.....	18-101
Table 18.7-5. Black Bear Habitat Loss and Alteration due to the Project.....	18-107
Table 18.7-6. Wetland Bird, Cavity-nesting Waterfowl, and Riverine Bird Habitat Loss and Alteration due to the Project.....	18-125

## Table of Contents

---

Table 18.7-7. KSM Project Vehicle Traffic (One-way Trips) during Construction, Operation, Closure, and Post-closure Phases of the Mine.....	18–146
Table 18.7-8. Potential Residual Effects on Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Valued Components due to Disruption of Movement.....	18–149
Table 18.7-9. Potential Residual Effects on Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Valued Components due to Sensory Disturbance .....	18–157
Table 18.7-10. Sensory Disturbance due to Blasting Noise in Mitchell, Sulphurets, and Kerr Pits for Moose, Mountain Goats, Grizzly Bears, and Black Bears during Construction and Operation.....	18–162
Table 18.7-11. Potential Effects that May Cause Direct Mortality to Wildlife Valued Components.....	18–206
Table 18.7-12. Potential Residual Effects on Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Valued Components due to Direct Mortality.....	18–209
Table 18.7-13. Potential Residual Effects on Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Valued Components due to Indirect Mortality .....	18–221
Table 18.7-14. Potential Residual Effects on Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Valued Components due to Attractants .....	18–227
Table 18.7-15. Sources of Chemicals of Potential Concern Evaluated for Valued Components.....	18–234
Table 18.7-16. Wildlife Guidelines for Water Quality .....	18–235
Table 18.7-17. Predicted Water Concentrations of Selenium, Mercury, and Molybdenum within Project Facilities and Receiving Waters.....	18–237
Table 18.7-18. Potential Residual Effects on Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Valued Components due to Chemical Hazards .....	18–247
Table 18.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat Residual Effects .....	18–263
Table 18.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Moose.....	18–265
Table 18.8-3. Summary of Residual Effects on Mountain Goat .....	18–269
Table 18.8-4. Summary of Residual Effects on Grizzly Bear .....	18–273
Table 18.8-5. Summary of Residual Effects on Black Bear .....	18–274
Table 18.8-6. Summary of Residual Effects on American Marten.....	18–278
Table 18.8-7. Summary of Residual Effects on Hoary Marmot.....	18–280

## Table of Contents

---

Table 18.8-8. Summary of Residual Effects on Bats .....	18–282
Table 18.8-9. Summary of Residual Effects on Raptors .....	18–284
Table 18.8-10. Summary of Residual Effects on Wetland Birds .....	18–285
Table 18.8-11. Summary of Residual Effects on Forest and Alpine Birds.....	18–286
Table 18.8-12. Summary of Residual Effects on Western Toad .....	18–289
Table 18.9-1. Residual Effects Predicted from the Wildlife Application/EIS .....	18–290
Table 18.9-2. CEA Area and Movement Area Rationale for Each Wildlife Valued Component.....	18–292
Table 18.9-3. Projects Scoped Out from the Cumulative Effects Assessment Because Their Elevation Falls Outside of the Capable Range of the Species .....	18–301
Table 18.9-4. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions in Regards to Moose .....	18–303
Table 18.9-5. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions in regards to Mountain Goats.....	18–308
Table 18.9-6. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions in regards to Grizzly Bears and Black Bears .....	18–313
Table 18.9-7. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions in regards to American Marten.....	18–320
Table 18.9-8. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions in regards to Hoary Marmots .....	18–323
Table 18.9-9. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions in regards to Bats, Raptors, Wetland Birds, and Forest and Alpine Birds .....	18–326
Table 18.9-10. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions in regards to Western Toads.....	18–329
Table 18.9-11. Summary Descriptions of Each Project with at Least One Spatial Linkage to at Least One Wildlife Valued Component.....	18–333
Table 18.9-12. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Moose .....	18–340
Table 18.9-13. Summary of Moose Winter Habitat Loss and Alteration due to all Projects in the CEA Area and Movement Area .....	18–342
Table 18.9-14. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Moose .....	18–345



## Table of Contents

---

Table 18.9-15. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Mountain Goats.	18–353
Table 18.9-16. Summary of Mountain Goat Winter and Summer Habitat Loss and Alteration due to all Projects in the CEA Area and Movement Area .....	18–355
Table 18.9-17. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Mountain Goats .....	18–357
Table 18.9-18. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Grizzly Bears.....	18–365
Table 18.9-19. Summary of Grizzly Bear Habitat Loss and Alteration due to all Projects in the CEA Area and Movement Area .....	18–366
Table 18.9-20. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Grizzly Bears .....	18–369
Table 18.9-21. Estimated Traffic Rates (Vehicles per Hour) of all CEA Projects Based on Projected Traffic Estimates (all Projects) and Existing Background Traffic Levels.....	18–371
Table 18.9-22. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Black Bears.....	18–377
Table 18.9-23. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Black Bears .....	18–379
Table 18.9-24. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on American Marten .....	18–385
Table 18.9-25. Summary of American Marten Habitat Loss and Alteration due to all Projects in the CEA Area .....	18–387
Table 18.9-26. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on American Marten .....	18–389
Table 18.9-27. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Hoary Marmots .	18–392
Table 18.9-28. Summary of Hoary Marmot Habitat Loss and Alteration due to all Projects in the CEA Area .....	18–394
Table 18.9-29. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Hoary Marmots .....	18–395
Table 18.9-30. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Bats.....	18–399
Table 18.9-31. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Raptors .....	18–400
Table 18.9-32. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Wetland Birds....	18–401

## **Table of Contents**

---

Table 18.9-33. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Forest and Alpine Birds .....	18-402
Table 18.9-34. Summary of Habitat Loss and Alteration for Bird Valued Components due to all Projects in the CEA Area.....	18-403
Table 18.9-35. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Raptors .....	18-405
Table 18.9-36. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Wetland Birds .....	18-407
Table 18.9-37. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Forest and Alpine Birds .....	18-409
Table 18.9-38. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Western Toads..	18-412
Table 18.9-39. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Western Toads .....	18-415
Table 18.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat .....	18-417
Table 19.1-1. Estimated Baseline Noise Levels .....	19-2
Table 19.1-2. Brucejack Mine Measured Baseline L <sub>90</sub> Noise Levels .....	19-2
Table 19.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Noise Valued Component Selection .....	19-6
Table 19.6-1. Potential Effects from Project Area on Noise .....	19-6
Table 19.6-2. Assessed Effects from Project Noise on Human and Wildlife Receptors .....	19-8
Table 19.7-1. Potential Effects from Project Noise on Human and Wildlife Receptors.....	19-10
Table 19.7-2. Potential Residual Effects due to Noise.....	19-11
Table 19.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Noise Residual Effects .....	19-17
Table 19.8-2. Noise Sources.....	19-19
Table 19.8-3. Receivers with L <sub>n</sub> > 57 dBA.....	19-20
Table 19.8-4. Affected Wildlife Receiver (Goat).....	19-27
Table 19.8-5. Wildlife Receivers with L <sub>peak</sub> > 108 dB .....	19-33
Table 19.8-6. Summary of Residual Effects on Noise .....	19-34
Table 19.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions with regard to Noise.....	19-37

## Table of Contents

---

Table 19.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Noise.....	19–39
Table 19.9-3. Summary Residual Cumulative Effects on Noise.....	19–41
Table 19.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Noise.....	19–47
Table 20.1-1. Definition of Assessment Areas.....	20–4
Table 20.1-2. British Columbia Population (2001 to 2012) .....	20–6
Table 20.1-3. Contribution of Resource Industries to the British Columbia Economy, 2011 .....	20–7
Table 20.1-4. Regional Study Area Population (1996 to 2011).....	20–10
Table 20.1-5. Regional Study Area Select Aboriginal Population (2001 to 2011) .....	20–11
Table 20.1-6. Total and Youth Unemployment Rates, North Coast Development Region (2006 to 2011).....	20–12
Table 20.1-7. Regional Study Area Income Characteristics, 2005.....	20–13
Table 20.1-8. Regional Diversity Indices .....	20–14
Table 20.1-9. Regional Study Area Labour Force by Industry (2006) .....	20–14
Table 20.1-10. Nisga’a Nation Community Populations (July 2012) .....	20–15
Table 20.1-11. Nisga’a Villages Population: Statistics Canada Census (1996 to 2011).....	20–16
Table 20.1-12. Businesses Located in Nisga’a Villages (2006) .....	20–16
Table 20.1-13. Nisga’a Nation Participation and Employment Rates (Skeena Native Development Society 2006).....	20–17
Table 20.1-14. Nisga’a Nation Labour Force Participation and Unemployment Rates (Statistics Canada 2006) .....	20–17
Table 20.1-15. Earnings and Income Data for Select Nisga’a Communities (2005).....	20–19
Table 20.1-16. Tahltan Population (July 2012).....	20–19
Table 20.1-17. Tahltan Nation Population (Statistics Canada 2001 to 2011).....	20–20
Table 20.1-18. Tahltan Labour Force Characteristics (2006).....	20–21
Table 20.1-19. Labour Force Characteristics: Select Tahltan Communities, Regional District of Kitimat-Stikine, and the Province of British Columbia (2006).....	20–22

## Table of Contents

---

Table 20.1-20. Earning and Income: Iskut, Regional District of Kitimat-Stikine, and British Columbia (2005) .....	20-23
Table 20.1-21. Population in the Hazeltons (Statistics Canada 2001 to 2011).....	20-24
Table 20.1-22. Labour Force Data for the Hazeltons and British Columbia (2006).....	20-25
Table 20.1-23. Earnings and Income Data for the Hazeltons (2005).....	20-26
Table 20.1-24. Gitanyow Population (2012) .....	20-26
Table 20.1-25. Gitanyow Population (Statistics Canada 2001 to 2011).....	20-27
Table 20.1-26. Labour Force Data for the Gitanyow 1 (2001 to 2006).....	20-27
Table 20.1-27. Earnings and Income Data for Gitanyow 1 (2005).....	20-29
Table 20.1-28. Dease Lake Unincorporated Population (2006 to 2011) .....	20-29
Table 20.1-29. Labour Force Data for Dease Lake Unincorporated (2001 and 2006) .....	20-30
Table 20.1-30. Earnings and Income Data for Dease Lake Unincorporated, the Regional District of Kitimat-Stikine, and British Columbia (2005).....	20-31
Table 20.1-31. District of Stewart Population (2001 to 2011).....	20-31
Table 20.1-32. Labour Force Data for Stewart (2001 and 2006) .....	20-33
Table 20.1-33. Earnings and Income Data for Stewart (2005).....	20-34
Table 20.1-34. Smithers Population (Statistics Canada 1996 to 2011).....	20-34
Table 20.1-35. Labour Force Data for Smithers (2001 and 2006).....	20-35
Table 20.1-36. Smithers Income Characteristics (2005).....	20-36
Table 20.1-37. Terrace Population (2001 to 2011).....	20-36
Table 20.1-38. Labour Force Data for Terrace (2001 and 2006) .....	20-37
Table 20.1-39. Number of Terrace Labour Force Employed by Industry Sector (2001 and 2006).....	20-38
Table 20.1-40. Terrace Income Characteristics (2005).....	20-39
Table 20.3-1. Cassiar Iskut-Stikine Land and Resource Management Plan: Economic-related Goals and Objectives .....	20-41
Table 20.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Economic Valued Component Selection .....	20-44

## Table of Contents

---

Table 20.6-1. Potential Effects from Project on Employment and Income .....	20-46
Table 20.6-2. Potential Effects from Project on Business Opportunities and Economic Development .....	20-47
Table 20.6-3. Overview Summary .....	20-49
Table 20.6-4. KSM Project Capital and Operating Expenditures in Canada, 2014 to 2071 .....	20-50
Table 20.6-5. KSM Project Capital and Operating Employment, 2014 to 2071 .....	20-51
Table 20.7-1. Summary of Economic Impacts of the KSM Project for Construction and Operation.....	20-56
Table 20.7-2. Project Employment Effects .....	20-57
Table 20.7-3. Potential Residual Effects on Economic Valued Components due to Change in Employment .....	20-63
Table 20.7-4. Project Income and Gross Domestic Product Effects .....	20-64
Table 20.7-5. Government Tax Revenue Effects of the Project.....	20-64
Table 20.7-6. Potential Residual Effects on Economic Valued Components due to Change in Income and Value-added .....	20-67
Table 20.7-7. Potential Residual Effects on Economic Valued Components due to Change in Business Activity .....	20-70
Table 20.7-8. Potential Residual Effects on Economic Valued Components due to Change in the Economy .....	20-73
Table 20.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Economics Residual Effects .....	20-75
Table 20.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Employment and Income .....	20-77
Table 20.8-3. Summary of Residual Effects on Business Opportunities and Economic Development .....	20-81
Table 20.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and Other Human Actions with regards to Economics.....	20-86
Table 20.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Employment and Income.....	20-87
Table 20.9-3. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Employment and Income.....	20-91

## Table of Contents

---

Table 20.9-4. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Business Opportunities and Economic Development.....	20-93
Table 20.9-5. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Business Opportunities and Economic Development.....	20-95
Table 20.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Economics ..	20-98
Table 21.2-1. Archaeological Sites within the Regional Study Area.....	21-13
Table 21.6-1. Identification and Rationale for Heritage Valued Component Selection .....	21-17
Table 21.6-2. Rationale for Heritage Valued Components Considered and Excluded from Further Analysis .....	21-17
Table 21.7-1. Potential Effects from Project on Archaeological Sites .....	21-18
Table 21.8-1. Definition of Significance Criteria for Heritage Residual Effects .....	21-29
Table 21.9-1. Significance Determination of Residual Effects .....	21-33
Table 21.9-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Archaeological Sites .....	21-35
Table 21.10-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between KSM Project and Other Human Activities that May Affect Heritage .....	21-36
Table 21.11-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Heritage .....	21-37
Table 22.1-1. Definition of Study Areas.....	22-5
Table 22.1-2. Regional Study Area Population and Demographics .....	22-7
Table 22.1-3. Post-secondary Facilities in the Regional Study Area.....	22-8
Table 22.1-4. Nisga’a Governance and Responsibilities .....	22-9
Table 22.1-5. Socio-economic Overview of Local Study Area Aboriginal Communities .....	22-10
Table 22.1-6. Local Study Area Aboriginal Community Population and Demographics .....	22-12
Table 22.1-7. Tahltan Nation Governance and Responsibilities .....	22-14
Table 22.1-8. Gitanyow Governance and Responsibilities .....	22-16
Table 22.1-9. Socio-economic Overview of Local Study Area Municipal Study Communities .....	22-18
Table 22.1-10. Municipal Community Population and Demographics.....	22-19

## **Table of Contents**

---

Table 22.3-1. Cassiar Iskut-Stikine Land and Resource Management Plan: Social- and Economic-related Goals and Objectives .....	22–24
Table 22.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Social Valued Component Selection .....	22–30
Table 22.6-1. Potential Effects from the Project on Community Demographics, Infrastructure, and Services .....	22–31
Table 22.6-2. Potential Effects from the Project on Education, Skills Development, and Training .....	22–33
Table 22.6-3. Potential Effects from the Project on Community Well-being .....	22–35
Table 22.6-4. Potential Effects Overview Summary .....	22–37
Table 22.7-1. Project-specific Employment Effects .....	22–40
Table 22.7-2. Potential Residual Effects on Social Valued Components due to Change in Employment .....	22–43
Table 22.7-3. Project-specific Effects on Income .....	22–45
Table 22.7-4. Potential Residual Effects on Social Valued Components due to Change in Income .....	22–47
Table 22.7-5. Potential Residual Effects on Social Valued Components due to Change in Population .....	22–51
Table 22.7-6. Government Tax Revenue Effects of the Project .....	22–55
Table 22.7-7. Potential Residual Effects on Social Valued Components due to Change in Tax Base .....	22–57
Table 22.7-8. Potential Residual Effects on Social Valued Components due to Change in Traffic .....	22–59
Table 22.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Social Residual Effects .....	22–61
Table 22.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Demographics, Infrastructure, and Services .....	22–63
Table 22.8-3. Summary of Residual Effects on Education, Skills Development, and Training .....	22–67
Table 22.8-4. Summary of Residual Effects on Community Well-being .....	22–71
Table 22.9-1. Summary of Potential Social Linkages between KSM Project and other Human Actions .....	22–77

## Table of Contents

---

Table 22.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Community Demographics, Infrastructure and Services.....	22-79
Table 22.9-3. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Community Demographics, Infrastructure, and Services.....	22-83
Table 22.9-4. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Education, Skills, and Training .	22-85
Table 22.9-5. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Education, Skills, and Training .....	22-87
Table 22.9-6. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Community Well-being .....	22-89
Table 22.9-7. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Community Well-being .....	22-97
Table 22.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Social .....	22-99
Table 23.1-1. Land Use Regulatory and Legislative Framework .....	23-3
Table 23.1-2. Information Sources Reviewed.....	23-7
Table 23.1-3. Designated Lands, Crown Tenures, and Resource Uses within the Local and Regional Study Areas .....	23-8
Table 23.1-4. Guide Outfitting Licence Areas in Relation to the Project .....	23-19
Table 23.1-5. Trapline Licences in Relation to the Project.....	23-21
Table 23.1-6. Commercial Recreation Licence Holders within the LSA and RSA.....	23-23
Table 23.1-7. Forest Licence Holders in the Local and Regional Study Areas .....	23-25
Table 23.1-8. Mineral Claim Holdings in Relation to the LSA .....	23-27
Table 23.1-9. Water Licence and Water Licence Applications in the Regional Study Area .....	23-30
Table 23.3-1. Cassiar Iskut-Stikine Land Resource Management Plan: General Management Directions.....	23-36
Table 23.3-2. Unuk River Resource Management Zones' Management Strategies (2000).....	23-38
Table 23.3-3. Nass South Sustainable Resource Management Plan Management Direction .....	23-39
Table 23.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Land Use Valued Component Selection .....	23-42



## Table of Contents

---

Table 23.5-2. Rationale for Land Use VCs Considered and Excluded from Further Analysis.....	23-44
Table 23.6-1. Potential Effects from Project on Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting and Trapping .....	23-45
Table 23.6-2. Potential Effects from Project on Recreational Hunting and Fishing .....	23-46
Table 23.6-3. Potential Effects from Project on Subsistence .....	23-48
Table 23.6-4. Potential Effects from Project on Traditional/Heritage Value of the Land .....	23-50
Table 23.6-5. Potential Effects from Project on Water Licences and Applications .....	23-51
Table 23.6-6. Potential Effects from Project on Mining and Mineral Exploration .....	23-53
Table 23.6-7. Overview Summary .....	23-55
Table 23.7-1. Potential Residual Effects on Land Use Valued Components due to Restriction on Access to Land and Resources.....	23-61
Table 23.7-2. Potential Residual Effects on Land Use Valued Components due to Change in Sensory Disturbances .....	23-67
Table 23.7-3. KSM Project Vehicle Traffic (One-way Trips) during Construction, Operation, Closure, and Post-closure Phases .....	23-77
Table 23.7-4. Potential Residual Effects on Land Use Valued Components due to Change in the Amount of Resources .....	23-81
Table 23.8-1. Definition of Significance Criteria for Land Use Residual Effects .....	23-89
Table 23.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting, and Trapping* .....	23-93
Table 23.8-3. Summary of Residual Effects on Recreational Hunting and Fishing* .....	23-93
Table 23.8-4. Summary of Residual Effects on Subsistence* .....	23-97
Table 23.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between KSM Project and Other Human Actions in Regards to Land Use .....	23-101
Table 23.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting and Trapping; Recreational Hunting and Fishing; and Subsistence* .....	23-103
Table 23.9-3. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting, and Trapping* .....	23-109

## Table of Contents

---

Table 23.9-4. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Recreational Hunting and Fishing.....	23–115
Table 23.9-5. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Subsistence.....	23–115
Table 23.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Land Use and Resources .....	23–119
Table 24.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Visual and Aesthetic Resources Valued Component Selection .....	24–17
Table 24.5-2. Rationale for Visual and Aesthetic Resources Valued Components Considered and Excluded from Further Analysis .....	24–18
Table 24.6-1. Potential Effects from Project on Visual and Aesthetic Resources.....	24–21
Table 24.7-1. Existing Landscape Visual Character .....	24–23
Table 24.7-2. Degree of Visual Modification.....	24–25
Table 24.7-3. Horizontal Visual Effect .....	24–25
Table 24.7-4. Vertical Visual Effect .....	24–26
Table 24.7-5. Distance of Visual Effect.....	24–26
Table 24.7-6. Final Visual Effect Rating .....	24–26
Table 24.7-7. HASSELL Matrix Results for Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for River Rafting Tours .....	24–31
Table 24.7-8. Potential Residual Effects on Visual and Aesthetic Resources for River Rafting Tours due to Project Infrastructure .....	24–31
Table 24.7-9. HASSELL Matrix Results for Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for Heli-skiing Tours .....	24–36
Table 24.7-10. Potential Residual Effects on Visual and Aesthetic Resources for Heli-skiers due to Project Infrastructure .....	24–38
Table 24.7-11. HASSELL Matrix Results for Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for Guided Backcountry Expeditions.....	24–41
Table 24.7-12. Potential Residual Effects on Visual and Aesthetic Resources for Guided Backcountry Expeditions due to Project Infrastructure.....	24–41
Table 24.7-13. HASSELL Matrix Results for Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for Guided Angling Trips.....	24–45

## Table of Contents

---

Table 24.7-14. Potential Residual Effects on Visual and Aesthetic Resources for Guided Angling Trips due to Project Infrastructure.....	24-45
Table 24.7-15. HASSELL Matrix Results for Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for Visitors to the Treaty Creek Site.....	24-49
Table 24.7-16. Potential Residual Effects on Visual and Aesthetic Resources for Visitors of the Treaty Creek Site due to Project Infrastructure .....	24-49
Table 24.7-17. HASSELL Matrix Results for Viewpoints Used to Assess Potential Alteration of Visual Quality for Users of Highway 37 .....	24-51
Table 24.7-18. Potential Residual Effects on Visual and Aesthetic Resources for Users of Highway 37 due to Project Infrastructure .....	24-51
Table 24.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Visual and Aesthetic Resources Residual Effects .....	24-53
Table 24.8-2. Magnitude Definitions Used for Visual Quality Residual Effects Assessment.....	24-55
Table 24.8-3. Extent Definitions Used for Visual Quality Residual Effects Assessment.....	24-55
Table 24.8-4. Summary of Residual Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for River Rafting Tours.....	24-56
Table 24.8-5. Summary of Residual Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Heli-skiing Tours.....	24-58
Table 24.8-6. Summary of Residual Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Backcountry Users .....	24-59
Table 24.8-7. Summary of Residual Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Anglers .....	24-60
Table 24.8-8. Summary of Residual Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Users of Highway 37 .....	24-62
Table 24.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between KSM Project and Other Human Actions in regards to Visual and Aesthetic Resources .....	24-65
Table 24.9-2. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for River Rafting Tours .....	24-67
Table 24.9-3. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Heli-skiing Tours.....	24-67
Table 24.9-4. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Guided Backcountry Expeditions.....	24-69

## Table of Contents

---

Table 24.9-5. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Anglers.....	24-73
Table 24.9-6. Summary of Cumulative Residual Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Users of Highway 37 .....	24-73
Table 24.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Visual and Aesthetic Resources.....	24-75
Table 25.1-1. Frequency and Magnitude of Water Quality Concentrations that were Greater than Drinking and Recreational Water Quality Guidelines, KSM Project, 2007 to 2011 .....	25-7
Table 25.1-2. Estimated Baseline Noise Levels .....	25-10
Table 25.4-1. Summary of Project Phases with Potential Effects to Human Health from Surface Water Quality, Air Quality, Quality of Country Foods, and Noise .....	25-14
Table 25.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Human Health Valued Component Selection .....	25-15
Table 25.5-2. Rationale for Human Health Valued Components Considered and Excluded from Further Analysis .....	25-17
Table 25.6-1. Potential Effects from the Project on Human Health .....	25-17
Table 25.7-1. Summary of Predicted Water Quality Frequency and Magnitude of Guideline Exceedances for Drinking and Recreational Water Quality .....	25-27
Table 25.7-2. Exposure Ratios and Incremental Lifetime Cancer Risk for Parameters exceeding British Columbia Drinking Water Guidelines .....	25-29
Table 25.7-3. Potential Residual Effects on Human Health Due to Changes in Drinking Water Quality.....	25-33
Table 25.7-4. Air Quality Background and Model Results for the Construction Phase for Sensitive Human Receptors .....	25-37
Table 25.7-5. Air Quality Background and Model Results for the Operation Phase for Sensitive Human Receptors .....	25-39
Table 25.7-6. Increased Risk of Mortality per Person due to Predicted Increase in PM <sub>2.5</sub> Concentration in Air (Construction and Operation minus Background).....	25-44
Table 25.7-7. Hazard Quotients for the Inhalation of Metals at Sensitive Receptor Sites for Toddlers during Construction.....	25-47
Table 25.7-8. Hazard Quotients for the Inhalation of Metals at Sensitive Receptor Sites for Toddlers during Operation.....	25-47

## Table of Contents

---

Table 25.7-9. Incremental Lifetime Cancer Risks due to Inhalation of Metals at Sensitive Human Receptor Sites .....	25-49
Table 25.7-10. Potential Residual Effects on Human Health due to Changes in Air Quality.....	25-51
Table 25.7-11. Harvest Data for Non-Aboriginal Hunters .....	25-53
Table 25.7-12. Metals Evaluated and Rationale for Inclusion as Contaminants of Potential Concern into the Screening Level Risk Assessment for the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	25-55
Table 25.7-13. Metals Evaluated and Rationale for Inclusion as Contaminates of Potential Concern into the Screening Level Risk Assessment for the Mine Site .....	25-57
Table 25.7-14. Potential Residual Effects on Human Health from Changes in Country Foods Quality .....	25-65
Table 25.7-15. Exposure Ratios for Human Receptors at the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	25-69
Table 25.7-16. Exposure Ratios for Human Receptors Downstream of the Mine Site .....	25-71
Table 25.7-17. Estimated Daily Lifetime Exposure and Incremental Lifetime Cancer Risk for Human Receptors Exposed to Arsenic in Country Foods from the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	25-73
Table 25.7-18. Estimated Daily Lifetime Exposure and Incremental Lifetime Cancer Risk for Human Receptors Exposed to Arsenic in Country Foods downstream of the Mine Site .....	25-73
Table 25.7-19. Recommended Maximum Weekly Number of Servings of Country Food at the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	25-73
Table 25.7-20. Recommended Maximum Weekly Servings of Country Foods Downstream of the Mine Site.....	25-74
Table 25.7-21. Typical Sound Levels .....	25-77
Table 25.7-22. Adjustments Applied to Sources.....	25-79
Table 25.7-23. Summary of Human Receptors for Noise .....	25-80
Table 25.7-24. Total Continuous Project Noise Level Summary.....	25-81
Table 25.7-25. Highest Adjusted Noise Levels (All Sources) Summary.....	25-81
Table 25.7-26. Count of Receptors with Sound Levels Higher than Levels Recommended by Health Canada.....	25-82

## Table of Contents

---

Table 25.7-27. Receivers with Daytime Sound Levels $L_d > 55$ dBA.....	25–82
Table 25.7-28. Receivers with Nighttime Sound Levels $L_n > 57$ dBA.....	25–83
Table 25.7-29. Receivers with Daytime/Nighttime Sound Levels $L_{dn} > 62$ dBA.....	25–83
Table 25.7-30. Potential Residual Effects on Human Health from Changes in Noise Levels.....	25–87
Table 25.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Human Health Residual Effects (Air Quality, Drinking Water, and Country Foods).....	25–89
Table 25.8-2. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Human Health Residual Effects (Noise).....	25–91
Table 25.8-3. Summary of Residual Effects on Human Health.....	25–93
Table 25.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between the KSM Project and other Human Actions in regard to Human Health.....	25–101
Table 25.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-Specific Residual Effects on Human Health.....	25–105
Table 25.9-3. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Human Health .....	25–109
Table 25.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Human Health .....	25–115
Table 26.3-1. Target Factor of Safety Requirements and Seismic Parameters for the Mitchell and McTagg Rock Storage Facilities .....	26–26
Table 26.4-1. Summary of Dam Instrumentation .....	26–45
Table 26.6-1. Typical Domestic and Industrial Waste Generated at the KSM Project.....	26–62
Table 26.6-2. KSM Project Camps .....	26–63
Table 26.6-3. Waste Treatment and Disposal Plan during Operation .....	26–66
Table 26.7-1. Typical Dangerous Goods and Hazardous Materials on Site by Project Phase .....	26–77
Table 26.9-1. Regulatory Requirements — Selected Examples .....	26–93
Table 26.10-1. Regulatory Requirements – Selected Examples.....	26–107
Table 26.10-2. Analysis of Selected Spill Risks.....	26–111
Table 26.10-3. Reportable Quantities under the Spill Reporting Regulation .....	26–115

## **Table of Contents**

---

Table 26.11-1. Relevant Ambient Air Quality Standards for the KSM Project .....	26–121
Table 26.11-2. Relevant Ambient Air Quality Standards for the KSM Project .....	26–127
Table 26.11-3. List of KSM Project Meteorological Stations and Parameters .....	26–134
Table 26.11-4. Meteorological Stations in the KSM Project Region.....	26–134
Table 26.12-1. Greenhouse Gas Emission Legislation and Initiatives .....	26–138
Table 26.13-1. Soil Salvage and Reclamation Monitoring Variables, Frequency, and Expected Targets .....	26–152
Table 26.13-2. Erosion Monitoring Variables, Frequency, and Expected Targets.....	26–158
Table 26.13-3. Soil Degradation Monitoring Variables, Frequency, and Expected Targets .....	26–161
Table 26.14-1. Deposit Rock Acid Rock Drainage Potential Classification .....	26–163
Table 26.14-2. Mine Site Waste Rock and Ore Storage Locations .....	26–164
Table 26.14-3. Mine Site Deposit Rock Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage Management and Mitigation Measures .....	26–165
Table 26.14-4. Non-deposit Rock and Overburden Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage Potential Classification .....	26–167
Table 26.14-5. Construction Suitability of Non-deposit Rock and Overburden .....	26–168
Table 26.14-6. Material Handling Requirements for Non-deposit Rock and Overburden Not Suitable for Construction.....	26–168
Table 26.14-7. Non-deposit Rock and Overburden Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage Management and Mitigation Measures.....	26–170
Table 26.14-8. Tailing Material Metal Leaching and Acid Rock Drainage Management and Mitigation Measures .....	26–172
Table 26.15-1. Groundwater Quality Targets Established for the KSM Project, as Defined in the British Columbia Water Quality Guidelines (2010) .....	26–175
Table 26.15-2. Proposed Monitoring Well Locations and Rationales.....	26–179
Table 26.18-1. Reduced Risk Work Windows for Fish Species within the Nass Timber Supply Area.....	26–245
Table 26.18-2. Reduced Risk Work Windows for Fish Species within the Cassiar Timber Supply Area.....	26–246

## Table of Contents

---

Table 26.18-3. Sampling Locations and Frequency for Monitoring Required under the Metal Mining Effluent Regulations .....	26–259
Table 26.18-4. Deleterious Substances under the Metal Mining Effluent Regulations .....	26–260
Table 26.18-5. Parameters for Water Quality Monitoring under the Metal Mining Effluent Regulations .....	26–262
Table 26.18-6. Summary of Three Principal Endpoint Responses for Fish Community and Biology Environmental Effects Monitoring .....	26–263
Table 26.18-7. Follow-up Monitoring Under the <i>Canadian Environmental Assessment Act</i> and for Risk Assessment, KSM Project .....	26–268
Table 26.18-8. Surface Water Quality Parameter List .....	26–269
Table 26.18-9. Sediment Quality Parameter List .....	26–270
Table 26.18-10. Benthic Invertebrate and Fish Tissue Metal Residue Parameter List .....	26–273
Table 26.19-1. Management Plans and Associated Wetland Management Target .....	26–281
Table 26.19-2. Wetland Buffer Guidelines .....	26–284
Table 26.19-3. Summary of General and Specific Mitigation Activities .....	26–287
Table 26.21-1. Wildlife Sensitive Periods Applicable to the Project .....	26–304
Table 26.21-2. Actions to Achieve Wildlife Management Targets during Operation .....	26–310
Table 26.21-3. Frequency of Monitoring Activities for the Wildlife Effects Monitoring Program .....	26–314
Table 26.22-1. Project Criteria .....	26–327
Table 27.4-1. Surficial Materials in the Project Area .....	27–10
Table 27.4-2. Soil Reclamation and Salvage Ratings .....	27–14
Table 27.4-3. Soil Salvage Potential in the McTagg and Mitchell Rock Storage Facilities ..	27–25
Table 27.4-4. Materials for Reclamation of the Tailing Management Facility .....	27–29
Table 27.5-1. Construction and Operating Camps .....	27–85
Table 27.6-1. Wildlife Habitat on the Mitchell and McTagg Rock Storage Facilities .....	27–90
Table 27.6-2. Reclamation of the Tailing Management Facility .....	27–91
Table 27.7-1. Reclaimed and Disturbed Areas by Phase .....	27–95



## Table of Contents

---

Table 27.11-1. Closure and Reclamation Costing .....	27–109
Table 28.2-1. Statutory Reporting Requirements for the KSM Project.....	28–1
Table 29.5-1. Nisga’a Nation Community Populations: July 2012 .....	29–8
Table 29.5-2. Nisga’a Kinship Structure .....	29–9
Table 29.7-1. Issues Identified by Nisga’a Nation and Nisga’a Citizens .....	29–19
Table 29.7-2. Summary of Benefits from Changing the Access Route from Highway 37 to the Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	29–21
Table 29.9-1. Summary of Commitments to Address Potential Effects on Nisga’a Rights and Interests.....	29–65
Table 30.7-1. Issues Identified by First Nations to Date .....	30–28
Table 30.7-2. Summary of Benefits Resulting From Access Road Changes to Processing and Tailing Management Area .....	30–34
Table 31.2-1. Navigable Waters Legislation, Policy, Standards and Guidelines .....	31–6
Table 31.3-1. Characteristics of Navigable Streams Affected by Project Works .....	31–17
Table 31.5-1. Identification and Rationale for Selecting Navigable Waters as a Valued Component.....	31–25
Table 31.6-1. Potential Indirect Effects of Project Works on Navigable Waters .....	31–27
Table 31.7-1. Residual Effects on Navigability .....	31–49
Table 31.8-1. Definitions of Significance Criteria for Residual Effects on Navigation .....	31–51
Table 31.8-2. Summary of Residual Effects on Navigability .....	31–53
Table 31.9-1. Summary of Potential Linkages between KSM Project and other Human Actions Regarding Navigable Waters .....	31–56
Table 31.9-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Project-specific Residual Effects on Navigation.....	31–60
Table 31.10-1. Summary of Assessment of Potential Environmental Effects: Navigable Waters .....	31–63
Table 32.1-1. Metal Prices and Net Smelter Prices .....	32–3
Table 32.1-2. Measured and Indicated Lerchs-Grossman Pit Resources .....	32–4
Table 32.1-3. Measured and Indicated Lerchs-Grossman Pit Resources – In-situ Metal .....	32–4

## Table of Contents

---

Table 33.2-1. KSM Project Alternatives Attribute Rating System.....	33–6
Table 33.3-1. Summary Comparison of Mining Method Alternatives for Kerr, Sulphurets, Mitchell and Iron Cap Deposits .....	33–11
Table 33.3-2. KSM Project Mining Method Pit Footprint Comparison .....	33–16
Table 33.3-3. Comparison of Stripping Ratios and Production Factors for Open Pit Only and Combined Mining Methods .....	33–16
Table 33.4-1. KSM Project Mine Development Schedule .....	33–19
Table 33.5-2. KSM Project Tailing Management Facility Alternatives Analysis Multiple Accounts Ledger .....	33–27
Table 33.5-3. Account Weighting for Base-case Value Scenarios .....	33–29
Table 33.5-4. Account: Environmental .....	33–29
Table 33.5-5. Sub-account Indicator Weightings of the Environment Account.....	33–30
Table 33.5-6. Account: Socio-economic .....	33–30
Table 33.5-7. Sub-account Indicator Weightings of the Socio-economic Account .....	33–31
Table 33.5-8. Account: Technical .....	33–31
Table 33.5-9. Sub-account Indicator Weightings of the Technical Account .....	33–31
Table 33.5-10. Sub-account: Estimated Costs .....	33–32
Table 33.5-11. KSM Project Tailing Management Facility Multiple Accounts Analysis Results .....	33–32
Table 33.6-1. Alternative Locations for the KSM Project Process Plant.....	33–34
Table 33.6-2. Summary Comparison of Process Plant Location Alternatives .....	33–39
Table 33.7-1. Summary Comparison of Mine Site Access Alternatives .....	33–51
Table 33.7-2. KSM Project Tailing Management Facility Alternatives Analysis Multiple Accounts Ledger .....	33–57
Table 33.7-3. Account Weighting .....	33–58
Table 33.7-4. Account: Environment .....	33–59
Table 33.7-5. Sub-account Indicator Weightings of the Environment Account.....	33–59
Table 33.7-6. Account: Socio-economic and Archaeology .....	33–59

## Table of Contents

---

Table 33.7-7. Sub-account Indicator Weightings of the Socio-economic Account .....	33–59
Table 33.7-8. Account: Technical .....	33–59
Table 33.7-9. Sub-account Indicator Weightings of the Technical Account .....	33–60
Table 33.7-10. KSM Project Processing and Tailing Management Area Access Road Multiple Account Analysis Results .....	33–61
Table 33.8-1. Summary Comparison of Ore Transport Alternatives .....	33–65
Table 33.9-1. Summary Comparison of Ore Concentrate Transport Alternatives .....	33–73
Table 33.9-2. Haul Distances from Bell II to Stewart and Prince Rupert .....	33–76
Table 33.9-3. Comparison of Ports of Stewart and Prince Rupert .....	33–76
Table 33.9-4. Environmental and Social Comparison of Ore Concentrate Transport Alternatives .....	33–78
Table 33.10-1. Summary Comparison of Gold Extraction Method Alternatives .....	33–85
Table 33.10-2. Comparison of Alternative Lixiviant Toxicity .....	33–95
Table 33.11-1. Waste Rock Alternatives Pre-assessment .....	33–98
Table 33.11-2. Comparison of Waste Rock Alternative Locations .....	33–103
Table 33.12-1. Summary Comparison of Tailing Management Facility Discharge Direction Alternatives .....	33–113
Table 33.12-2. Summary Comparison of Water Storage Dam Alternatives .....	33–121
Table 33.12-3. Summary Comparison of Mine Contact Water Treatment Plant Alternatives .....	33–125
Table 33.12-4. Summary Comparison Selenium, Se(VI), Treatment Technology Alternatives .....	33–133
Table 33.13-1. Estimated Annual Energy Consumption of the Semi-autogenous Grinding Mill .....	33–138
Table 33.13-2. Estimated Annual Energy Consumption of High Pressure Grinding Rolls Mill .....	33–140
Table 33.13-3. Summary Comparison of Ore Grinding Alternatives .....	33–141
Table 33.13-4. Capital Cost Summary Comparison .....	33–143
Table 33.13-5. Comminution Circuit Operating Cost Comparison .....	33–143

## Table of Contents

---

Table 33.13-6. Total Electrical Energy Cost for Mill-ball Mill-pebble Crushing and High Pressure Grinding Rolls Mill Options .....	33–144
Table 33.16-1. Employee Camps—Construction Phase.....	33–146
Table 34.1-1. Climate Parameter Projections for Dease Lake, BC, and Prince Rupert, BC .....	34–15
Table 34.1-2. Project Component Sensitivities Arising from Potential Interaction with Changes to Climate Parameters.....	34–18
Table 34.2-1. Exceedance Probabilities of Flood Events with Varying Return Periods.....	34–25
Table 34.2-2. Flood Risks Summary Table .....	34–27
Table 34.3-1. Landslide Geohazard Summary Table .....	34–29
Table 34.3-2. Canadian Classification System for Avalanche Size .....	34–32
Table 34.3-3. Avalanche Geohazard Summary Table .....	34–33
Table 34.3-4. Recommended Design Peak Ground Accelerations for Tailing Management Facility and Rock Storage Facility .....	34–38
Table 34.3-5. Recommended 10,000-year Return Period Uniform Hazard Response Spectra for the Tailing Management Facility .....	34–38
Table 35.2-1. Likelihood of Failure Occurrence Criteria.....	35–12
Table 35.2-2. Severity of Failure Effects (Consequences).....	35–14
Table 35.2-3. Cost Consequence Severity .....	35–15
Table 35.2-4. Worksheet Coding.....	35–17
Table 35.3-1. Summary of Rate of Flood Rise.....	35–58
Table 35.3-2. Comparison of Canadian and Alaska Dam Design Criteria.....	35–59
Table 36.4-1. Summary of Residual Effects on Renewable Resources.....	36–7
Table 36.6-1. Effects of KSM Project on the Capacity for Renewable Resources .....	36–17
Table 37.2-1. Summary of Past Mining Projects in the Cumulative Effects Assessment Study Areas.....	37–6
Table 37.2-2. Summary of Present Projects within the Cumulative Effects Assessment Study Areas.....	37–7

## Table of Contents

---

Table 37.2-3. Summary of Reasonably Foreseeable Future Projects within the Cumulative Effects Assessment Study Areas .....	37-9
Table 37.6-1. Summary of Assessment of Project-specific Residual Effects for Greenhouse Gas Emissions .....	37-15
Table 37.6-2. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Air Quality .....	37-19
Table 37.6-3. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Air Quality .....	37-23
Table 37.6-4. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects.....	37-27
Table 37.6-5. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Soil Quantity.....	37-31
Table 37.6-6. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Soil Quality.....	37-31
Table 37.6-7. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Groundwater Quantity and Quality.....	37-35
Table 37.6-8. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Groundwater Quantity .....	37-39
Table 37.6-9. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Groundwater Quality .....	37-39
Table 37.6-10. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Surface Water .....	37-43
Table 37.6-11. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Surface Water Quantity .....	37-45
Table 37.6-12. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Surface Water Quality .....	37-47
Table 37.6-13. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Project-specific Residual Effects on Fish and Aquatic Habitat VCs .....	37-52
Table 37.6-14. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Bull Trout.....	37-59
Table 37.6-15. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Dolly Varden.....	37-61
Table 37.6-16. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Rainbow Trout/Steelhead .....	37-65
Table 37.6-17. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Pacific Salmon .....	37-69
Table 37.6-18. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Aquatic Habitat.....	37-73
Table 37.6-19. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Wetlands.....	37-82

## Table of Contents

---

Table 37.6-20. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Wetland Extent and Function .....	37-85
Table 37.6-21. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Potential Pine Mushroom Habitat .....	37-90
Table 37.6-22. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Avalanche Track Ecosystems .....	37-91
Table 37.6-23. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Listed Ecosystems .....	37-91
Table 37.6-24. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems .....	37-92
Table 37.6-25. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems .....	37-92
Table 37.6-26. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Old Forest Ecosystems .....	37-93
Table 37.6-27. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Other Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	37-93
Table 37.6-28. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Pine Mushroom Habitat .....	37-95
Table 37.6-29. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Avalanche Track Ecosystems .....	37-97
Table 37.6-30. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Listed Ecosystems .....	37-99
Table 37.6-31. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Riparian and Floodplain Ecosystems .....	37-103
Table 37.6-32. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Alpine and Parkland Ecosystems .....	37-105
Table 37.6-33. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Old Forest Ecosystems .....	37-109
Table 37.6-35. Residual Effects Predicted from the Wildlife Application for an Environmental Assessment Certificate / Environmental Impact Statement .....	37-125

## Table of Contents

---

Table 37.6-36. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Moose .....	37-126
Table 37.6-37. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Mountain Goats.	37-127
Table 37.6-38. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Grizzly Bears.....	37-129
Table 37.6-39. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Black Bears.....	37-131
Table 37.6-40. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on American Marten .....	37-133
Table 37.6-41. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Hoary Marmots .	37-134
Table 37.6-42. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Bats.....	37-135
Table 37.6-43. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Raptors .....	37-135
Table 37.6-44. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Wetland Birds....	37-136
Table 37.6-45. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Forest and Alpine Birds .....	37-137
Table 37.6-46. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Western Toads..	37-137
Table 37.6-47. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Moose .....	37-139
Table 37.6-48. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Mountain Goats .....	37-139
Table 37.6-49. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Grizzly Bears .....	37-143
Table 37.6-50. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Black Bears .....	37-143
Table 37.6-51. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on American Marten .....	37-145
Table 37.6-52. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Hoary Marmots.....	37-145
Table 37.6-53. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Raptors .....	37-147
Table 37.6-54. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Wetland Birds .....	37-147

## Table of Contents

---

Table 37.6-55. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Forest and Alpine Birds .....	37-147
Table 37.6-56. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Western Toads .....	37-151
Table 37.6-57. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects of Noise.....	37-158
Table 37.6-58. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects to Noise .....	37-159
Table 37.6-59. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Employment and Income .....	37-166
Table 37.6-60. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Business Opportunities and Economic Development.....	37-167
Table 37.6-61. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Employment and Income....	37-169
Table 37.6-62. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Business Opportunities and Economic Development.....	37-171
Table 37.6-63. Summary of Assessment of Project-specific Residual Effects for Heritage.....	37-173
Table 37.6-64. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Community Demographics, Infrastructure and Services .....	37-178
Table 37.6-65. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Education, Skills, and Training .....	37-179
Table 37.6-66. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Community Well-being .....	37-180
Table 37.6-67. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Community Demographics and Infrastructure .....	37-183
Table 37.6-68. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Education, Skills, and Training .....	37-185
Table 37.6-69. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Community Well-being .....	37-187
Table 37.6-70. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting and Trapping; Recreational Hunting and Fishing; and Subsistence.....	37-193



## Table of Contents

---

Table 37.6-71. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Commercial Recreation, Guide Outfitting and Trapping.....	37-199
Table 37.6-72. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Recreational Hunting and Fishing.....	37-203
Table 37.6-73. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Subsistence.....	37-203
Table 37.6-74. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Heli-Skiing Tours .....	37-207
Table 37.6-75. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Guided Backcountry Expeditions .....	37-207
Table 37.6-76. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Alteration of Visual Quality for Anglers.....	37-208
Table 37.6-77. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Human Health ...	37-215
Table 37.6-78. Summary of Residual Cumulative Effects on Human Health .....	37-223
Table 37.6-79. Summary of Projects and Activities with Potential to Interact Cumulatively with Expected Project-specific Residual Effects on Navigable Waters.....	37-227
Table 37.7-1. Significance of All Residual Cumulative Effects due to the KSM Project and other Past, Present, and Reasonably Foreseeable Future Projects and Activities .....	37-229
Table 38.3-1. Summary of Valued Components Requiring a Follow-up Program .....	38-9
Table 39.2-1. Summary of Project Residual and Cumulative Effects and Mitigation Measures .....	39-3
Table 39.5-1. Table of Conditions for the KSM Project.....	39-53
Table 39.6-1. Summary of Commitments to Address Potential Effects on Nisga'a Rights and Interests.....	39-62
Table 39.7-1. Summary of Specific Commitments to Address Potential Effects to Aboriginal Customs, Practices, and Interests.....	39-66

**LIST OF PLATES**

<b>Plate</b>	<b>Page</b>
Plate 7.1-1. Teigen 10 m meteorology station (March 2011). .....	7–11
Plate 7.1-2. Unuk-Teigen 10 m meteorology station (June 2011). .....	7–11
Plate 7.1-3. Mitchell 10 m meteorology station (Left: August 2012; Right: March 2012). .....	7–12
Plate 7.1-4. Eskay Creek station, October 2010. ....	7–12
Plate 8.1-1. Steep slope near the south boundary of the Kerr deposit. ....	8–5
Plate 8.1-2. Orthic Dystric Brunisol. ....	8–10
Plate 8.1-3. Orthic Humo-Ferric Podzol. ....	8–10
Plate 8.1-4. Poorly drained Orthic Gleysol. ....	8–10
Plate 8.1-5. Organic soil (Typic Mesisol). ....	8–10
Plate 16.1-1. Peat-moss (Wf03) fen at Site KS50 (North Cell – TMF). ....	16–10
Plate 16.1-2. Barclay’s willow – Water sedge – Glow moss (Wf04) fen at Site KS42 (South Cell – TMF). ....	16–10
Plate 16.1-3. Narrow-leaved cotton-grass – Marsh-marigold (Wf12) fen at Site KS72 (Plant Site Area). ....	16–11
Plate 16.1-4. KS49 (North Cell – TMF) – Open fen areas with high sedge components provide early spring forage for grizzly bear and black bear. These open areas surrounded by mature trees also provide aerial forage opportunities for many bat species. ....	16–26
Plate 16.1-5. KS64 (Plant Site Area) — A small subalpine shallow open water wetland in complex with a surrounding fen wetland. Note the aquatic vegetation, which can provide forage opportunities for moose. ....	16–27
Plate 16.1-6. KS20 (Upper Unuk River) — Migratory bird sign observed within this fen complex. ....	16–27
Plate 16.1-7. KS29 (Coulter Creek access road) – Beaver lodge observed within this marsh wetland complex. ....	16–29
Plate 16.1-8. KS09 (North Cell – TMF) Water infiltrating into a stream from an adjacent swamp complex, maintaining downstream hydrology. ....	16–30

## Table of Contents

---

Plate 16.1-9. KS27B (Coulter Creek access road) — Black spruce–skunk cabbage swamp. Skunk cabbage provides early forage for grizzly bear and black bear species.....	16–32
Plate 16.1-10. KS35 (Sulphurets Creek at Unuk River) — Willow swamp complex surrounding larger open fen complex. Example of areas that provides thermoregulation and forage opportunities for large mammals such as moose.....	16–32
Plate 16.1-11. KS22 (Coulter Creek access road) — Subalpine shallow open water wetland providing water for surrounding ecosystems and wildlife as well as open water habitat for waterfowl.....	16–33
Plate 21.7-1. Terrain at site HcTo-1, looking northwest from shovel test 29. ....	21–21
Plate 21.7-2. Tools recovered during shovel testing at HcTo-1. ....	21–21
Plate 21.7-3. Terrain at site HdTk-4, looking northwest across the site. ....	21–22
Plate 21.7-4. View south of archaeological site HdTn-1. ....	21–23
Plate 21.7-5. View southwest of archaeological site HdTn-2. The positive shovel tests are located near the surveyor’s vest (photo left). ....	21–23
Plate 21.7-6. Shovel testing at HdTo-7, looking east toward the helicopter pad. Shovel test 1 in foreground.....	21–24
Plate 21.7-7. Tools recovered during shovel testing at HdTo-7. ....	21–25
Plate 21.7-8. Looking southeast at archaeological site HdTI-1. ....	21–26
Plate 21.7-9. View of archaeological site HdTo-6, Tom Mackay Creek and the surrounding area, looking southeast.....	21–26
Plate 24.1-1a. View 3 – Viewpoint 1 - Looking north from Unuk River (August 3, 2009).....	24–7
Plate 24.1-1b. Viewpoint 1 - Location and bearings, Unuk River in relation to proposed infrastructure. ....	24–7
Plate 24.1-1c. View 5 – Viewpoint 2 - Looking south from Unuk River (August 3, 2009). ....	24–7
Plate 24.1-1d. Viewpoint 2 - Location and bearings, Unuk River in relation to proposed infrastructure. ....	24–7
Plate 24.1-1e. View 6 – Viewpoint 3 - Looking north from Unuk River (August 3, 2009).....	24–7
Plate 24.1-1f. Viewpoint 3 - Location and bearings, Unuk River in relation to proposed infrastructure. ....	24–7
Plate 24.1-2a. View 13 - Viewpoint 8 - Looking south from a point on Teigen Lake (August 14, 2010).....	24–8

## Table of Contents

---

Plate 24.1-2b. View 14 – Viewpoint 8 – Looking southeast from a point on Teigen Lake (August 14, 2010).....	24–8
Plate 24.1-2c. Viewpoint 8 - Location and bearings from a point on Teigen Lake in relation to proposed infrastructure. ....	24–8
Plate 24.1-3a. View 8 – Viewpoint 5 – Looking east from a point north of Hodkin Lake (August 3, 2009).....	24–9
Plate 24.1-3b. Viewpoint 5 - Location and bearings from a point on Teigen Creek in relation to proposed infrastructure. ....	24–9
Plate 24.1-4a. View 9 - Viewpoint 6 – Looking southeast from a point on Teigen Creek (August 3, 2009).....	24–9
Plate 24.1-4b. View 10 – Viewpoint 6 – Looking south from a point on Teigen Creek (August 3, 2009).....	24–9
Plate 24.1-4c. Viewpoint 6 - Location and bearings from a point on Teigen Creek in relation to proposed infrastructure. ....	24–9
Plate 24.1-5a. View 20 - Viewpoint 12 - Looking north-northwest from a point above the Sulphurets Glacier (September 29, 2010).....	24–10
Plate 24.1-5b. Viewpoint 12 - Location and bearings from a point above the Sulphurets Glacier in relation to proposed infrastructure. ....	24–10
Plate 24.1-6a. View 18 - Viewpoint 10 - Looking east from a helicopter up Mitchell Creek Valley (August 2009). ....	24–11
Plate 24.1-6b. Viewpoint 10 - Location and bearing from a helicopter up Mitchell Creek Valley in relation to proposed infrastructure. ....	24–11
Plate 24.1-7a. View 19 - Viewpoint 11 - Looking north from the ridge between Treaty Creek and the south and west Teigen tributaries (August 2009).....	24–11
Plate 24.1-7b. Viewpoint 11 - Location and bearing from the ridge between Treaty Creek and the south and west Teigen tributaries in relation to proposed infrastructure. ....	24–11
Plate 24.1-8a. Viewpoint 16 - Looking north from a point on a mountain overlooking Treaty Creek (July 2, 2012). ....	24–12
Plate 24.1-8b. Viewpoint 17 - Looking north from a point on a mountain overlooking Treaty Creek (July 2, 2012). ....	24–12
Plate 24.1-8c. Viewpoints 16 and 17 - Location and bearings from points on two mountains overlooking Treaty Creek in relation to proposed infrastructure.....	24–12
Plate 24.7-1. Viewpoint 1 - Visual rendering of the proposed Unuk River bridge. ....	24–27

## **Table of Contents**

---

Plate 24.7-2. Viewpoint 2 - Visual rendering of view toward the proposed Coulter Creek access road.....	24-27
Plate 24.7-3. Viewpoint 3 - Visual rendering of the view toward the proposed Coulter Creek access road.....	24-29
Plate 24.7-4. Viewpoint 5 - Visual rendering looking toward the proposed Tailing Management Facility. ....	24-33
Plate 24.7-5. Viewpoint 16 - Visual rendering looking toward the proposed Tailing Management Facility post closure. ....	24-34
Plate 24.7-6. Viewpoint 12 - Visual rendering looking toward the proposed Sulphurets Pit...	24-34
Plate 24.7-7. Visual rendering on Bell-Irving River looking toward the proposed bridge.....	24-44
Plate 24.7-8. Viewpoint 18 - Visual rendering on Highway 37 looking toward the proposed Treaty Creek access road. ....	24-48
Plate 27.4-1. Weakly developed soils (Orthic Dystric Brunisol). ....	27-11
Plate 27.4-2. Well-developed soils (Orthic Humo-Ferric Podzol). ....	27-11
Plate 27.4-3. Poorly-drained soils (Orthic Humic Gleysol). ....	27-11
Plate 27.4-4. Organic soil.....	27-11
Plate 27.4-5. Glacier-filled valley, south of the Sulphurets deposit. ....	27-12
Plate 27.4-6. Steep slope (74%) near the south boundary of the Kerr deposit.....	27-16